

MIDDLETON ASSOCIATES INCORPORATED
ARCHITECTURAL SERVICES
1702 W. COLLEGE AVE., SUITE E, NORMAL, IL 61761-2793
309/452-1271 FAX 309/454-8049
E-MAIL: russ@miltonassociates.net
Website: www.miltonassociates.net

BRiC PARTNERSHIP LLC
ENGINEERING SERVICES
427 East Monroe Street, Springfield, IL 62701
217/679-0827
E-MAIL: fmaras@BricPartnership.com
Website: <https://www.bricpartnership.com>

SPECIFICATIONS FOR LABOR AND MATERIALS
FOR
EDISON ELEMENTARY SCHOOL 2019 ADDITION
FOR
MACOMB CUSD #185
323 W. WASHINGTON STREET
MACOMB, IL 61455



**VOLUME TWO – MECHANICAL - ELECTRICAL – TECHNOLOGY
COMMUNICATIONS AND EARTHWORK**

PROJECT NUMBER: 2275 0217

ISSUE DATE: March 4, 2019

PRE-BID: Wednesday March 20, 2019 at 3:15 p.m.
Edison Elementary School, 521 S. Pearl St., Macomb, IL 61455

BID DATE: Wednesday April 10, 2019 at 2:00 p.m.
Macomb CUSD #185, District Office
323 W. Washington Street
Macomb, IL 61455



DIVISION 00 – BIDDING & CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS

Section 00 0110 – Table of Contents

PROJECT: EDISON ELEMENTARY SCHOOL 2019 ADDITION

FOR: Macomb CUSD #185
323 W. Washington Street
Macomb, IL 61455

SUPERINTENDENT OF SCHOOLS: Dr. Mark Twomey

ARCHITECT: Middleton Associates Incorporated
1702 W. College Avenue, Suite E
Normal, IL 61761-3028
309/452-1271 FAX 309/454-8049
e-mail: russ@middletonassociates.net
website: www.middletonassociates.net

ENGINEER: CM Engineering
2801 Woodard Dr., Suite 105
Columbia, MO 65202
573/874-9455 FAX 573/874-9474
e-mail: russ@cmeng.com
website: www.cmeng.com

A/E PROJECT NO: 2275 0217

ISSUE DATE: March 4, 2019

Specifications are divided into two books for convenience:
Volume 1 - Division 0 Procurement through Division 22 Plumbing
Volume 2 - Division 23 through end of specification Division 32

VOLUME 1

DIVISION	SECTION	TITLE	PAGES
00		PROCUREMENT REQUIREMENTS	
	00 0110	Table of Contents.....	00 0110-1- 7
	00 1116	Invitation for Bids	00 1116-1- 1
	00 2113	Instructions to Bidders	00 2113-1-14
	00 2213	Supplementary Instructions	00 2213-1- 6
	00 2413	Scope of Bid.....	00 2413-1- 2
	00 3000	Project Schedule and Terms.....	00 3000-1- 3
	00 4000	Bid Form	00 4000-1- 3
	00 4010	Voluntary Alternate & Substitution Form.....	00 4010-1- 1
	00 4113	Award & Contract Form	00 4113-1- 1
	00 7000	General & Supplementary Conditions.....	00 7000-1- 8
01		ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS	
	01 1000	Summary of Work	01 1000-1- 5
	01 2500	Substitutions & Product Options	01 2500-1- 3

DIVISION	SECTION	TITLE	PAGES
	01 3000	Project Management.....	01 3000-1- 5
	01 3300	Submittal Procedures.....	01 3300-1- 4
	01 3516	Alteration Project Procedures	01 3516-1- 4
	01 4216	Definitions	01 4216-1- 2
	01 5000	Temporary Facilities & Controls.....	01 5000-1- 4
	01 7800	Project Closeout.....	01 7800-1- 3
02		EXISTING CONDITIONS	
	02 4116	Minor Demolition for Remodeling.....	02 4116-1- 3
	02 8200	Minor Demolition for ACM Removal.....	02 8200-1- 5
03		CONCRETE	
	03 1500	Concrete Accessories.....	03 1500-1- 1
	03 3000	Concrete	03 3000-1- 9
	03 3500	Polished Concrete.....	03 3500- 1-5
	03 4113	Hollow Core Precast Concrete.....	03 4113-1- 6
04		MASONRY	
	04 2000	Unit Masonry.....	04 2000-1-13
	04 7200	Architectural Cast Stone	04 7200-1- 7
05		METALS	
	05 1200	Structural Steel	05 1200-1- 6
	05 2100	Steel Joists.....	05 2100-1- 5
	05 3100	Metal Decking	05 3100-1- 3
	05 4000	Cold Formed Metal Framing	05 4000-1- 6
	05 5500	Metal Fabrications.....	05 5500-1- 4
06		WOOD, PLASTICS & COMPOSITES	
	06 1000	Rough Carpentry.....	06 1000-1- 5
	06 2000	Finish Carpentry.....	06 2000-1- 3
	06 4116	Plastic Laminate Clad Cabinets.....	06 4116-1- 4
07		THERMAL & MOISTURE PROTECTION	
	07 1113	Foundation Waterproofing	07 1113-1- 2
	07 2113	Insulation.....	07 2113-1- 5
	07 2400	EIFS	07 2400-1- 8
	07 5323	EPDM Elastomeric Membrane Roofing	07 5323-1-10
	07 6200	Sheet Metal Flashing & Trim.....	07 6200-1- 6
	07 7233	Roof Hatches	07 7233-1- 5
	07 9100	Infiltration Barriers.....	07 9100-1- 2
	07 9200	Sealants & Caulks.....	07 9200-1- 5
08		DOORS & WINDOWS	
	08 1113	Hollow Metal Work	08 1113-1- 4
	08 1140	Aluminum Doors & Storefront Framing	08 1140-1- 9
	08 1400	Flush Wood Doors	08 1400-1- 3
	08 3113	Access Doors.....	08 3113-1- 2
	08 3313	Coiling Doors	08 3313-1- 3
	08 3346	Coiling Storm Shutter.....	08 3346-1- 3
	08 5113	Aluminum Windows	08 5113-1- 6

DIVISION	SECTION	TITLE	PAGES
	08 7100	Door Hardware.....	08 7100-1- 9
	08 8000	Glazing.....	08 8000-1- 5
09		FINISHES	
	09 2116	Gypsum Wallboard	09 2116-1- 5
	09 3016	Quarry Tile	09 3016-1- 5
	09 5123	Acoustical Ceilings.....	09 5123-1- 5
	09 6250	Specialty Flooring Stair Treads.....	09 6250-1- 2
	09 6500	Resilient Flooring & Base.....	09 6500-1- 5
	09 9000	Painting	09 9000-1- 7
10		SPECIALTIES	
	10 1100	Visual Display Surfaces	10 1100-1- 4
	10 1416	Cast Aluminum Plaques.....	10 1416-1- 2
	10 1423	Interior Signs.....	10 1423-1- 4
	10 2113	HDPE Toilet Compartments.....	10 2113-1- 5
	10 2800	Toilet & Bath Accessories	10 2800-1- 3
	10 4400	Fire Protection Specialties	10 4400-1- 2
	10 5113	Corridor Lockers	10 5113-1- 5
11		EQUIPMENT	
	11 4000	Food Service Equipment.....	11 4000-1-14
	11 4000	Food Service Equipment Appendix	11 4000-1-15
	11 6813	Playground Equipment.....	11 6813-1- 2
12		FURNISHINGS	
	12 2400	Window Shades	12 2400-1- 2
	12 6400	Wall Mounted Tables & Benches.....	12 6400-1- 6
14		CONVEYING EQUIPMENT	
	14 2123	Passenger Elevator.....	14 2123-1-11
21		FIRE PROTECTION	
	21 05 00	Common Work Results Fire Suppression.....	21 05 00-1- 6
	21 13 13	Wet Pipe Sprinkler Systems	21 13 13-1-20
22		PLUMBING	
	22 05 00	Common Work Results for Plumbing.....	22 05 00-1- 8
	22 05 16	Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping	22 05 16-1- 3
	22 05 19	Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping	22 05 19-1- 4
	22 05 23	General Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping.....	22 05 23-1- 5
	22 05 29	Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.....	22 05 29-1- 9
	22 05 53	Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment	22 05 53-1- 5
	22 05 93	Testing, Adjusting and Balancing for Plumbing ...	22 05 93-1- 6
	22 07 19	Plumbing Piping Insulation.....	22 07 19-1-13
	22 11 16	Domestic Water Piping	22 11 16-1-11
	22 11 19	Domestic Water Piping Specialties	22 11 19-1- 8
	22 13 16	Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping	22 13 16-1- 9
	22 13 19	Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties	22 13 19-1- 8
	22 14 13	Storm Drainage Piping.....	22 14 13-1- 7

DIVISION	SECTION	TITLE	PAGES
	22 14 23	Storm Drainage Piping Specialties	22 14 23-1- 4
	22 34 00	Electric, Domestic-Water Heaters.....	22 34 00-1- 6
	22 42 13.13	Commercial Water Closets	22 42 13.13-1-5
	22 42 13.16	Commercial Urinals	22 24 13.16-1-5
	22 42 16.13	Commercial Lavatories	22 42 16.13-1-5
	22 42 16.16	Commercial Sinks.....	22 42 16.16-1-7
	22 42 33	Wash Fountains.....	22 42 33-1- 4

VOLUME 2

23

MECHANICAL

	23 05 00	Common Work Results for HVAC.....	23 05 00-1-11
	23 05 13	Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equip. ...	23 05 13-1- 3
	23 05 17	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping	23 05 17-1- 4
	23 05 18	Escutcheons for HVAC Piping	23 05 18-1- 2
	23 05 19	Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping	23 05 19-1- 7
	23 05 23.12	Ball Valves for HVAC Piping.....	23 05 23.12-1- 7
	23 05 23.14	Check Valves for HVAC Piping.....	23 05 23.14-1- 6
	23 05 29	Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment.....	23 05 29-1-10
	23 05 53	Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment	23 05 53-1- 4
	23 05 93	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC	23 05 93-1-20
	23 07 13	Duct Insulation	23 07 13-1-13
	23 07 19	HVAC Piping Insulation.....	23 07 19-1-15
	23 09 23	Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC.....	23 09 23-1-77
	23 09 23.11	Control Valves.....	23 09 23.11-1-14
	23 11 23	Facility Natural-Gas Piping	23 11 23-1-15
	23 21 13	Hydronic Piping.....	23 21 13-1-12
	23 21 13.33	Ground-Loop Heat-Pump Piping.....	23 21 13.33-1- 3
	23 21 16	Hydronic Piping Specialties	23 21 16-1- 6
	23 21 23	Hydronic Pumps.....	23 21 23-1- 5
	23 23 00	Refrigerant Piping	23 23 00-1- 8
	233113	Metal Ducts	233113-1- 14
	23 33 00	Air Duct Accessories.....	23 33 00-1- 9
	23 371 3.13	Air Diffusers	23 371 3.13-1- 2
	23 74 13	Packaged Outdoor, Central-Station Air Handling Units.....	23 74 13-1-10
	23 81 46	Water Source Unitary Heat Pumps.....	23 81 46-1- 9

26

ELECTRICAL

	26 05 23	Building Wire & Cable	26 05 23-1- 4
	26 05 26	Grounding and Blocking.....	26 05 26-1- 3
	26 05 29	Supporting Devices.....	26 05 29-1- 2
	26 05 30	Conduit.....	26 05 30-1- 5
	26 05 33	Boxes	26 05 33-1- 3
	26 05 35	Cabinets & Enclosures.....	26 05 35-1- 2
	26 05 53	Electrical Identification	26 05 53-1- 2
	26 05 80	Equipment Wiring Systems.....	26 05 80-1- 2
	26 08 00	Testing	26 08 00-1- 3
	26 09 26	Lighting Controls	26 09 26-1- 9
	26 24 16	Panelboards.....	26 24 16-1- 3
	26 24 20	Motor Controls	26 24 20-1- 2

DIVISION	SECTION	TITLE	PAGES
	26 27 26	Wiring Devices	26 27 26-1- 4
	26 28 16	Enclosed Switches.....	26 28 16-1- 2
	26 29 13	Enclosed Motor Controls.....	26 29 13-1- 4
	26 29 16	Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers	26 29 16-1- 4
	26 51 00	Luminaries	26 51 00-1- 3
27		COMMUNICATIONS	
	27 10 00	Structured Cabling	27 10 00-1-10
	27 11 00	Communications Raceway System	27 11 00-1- 2
	27 5123.50	Educational Intercommunications	27 5123.50-1- 8
28		ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY	
	28 2300	Video Surveillance	28 2300-1- 10
	28 31 11	Fire and Smoke Detection System	28 31 11-1-11
31		EARTH WORK	
	31 2200	Grading & Site Work	31 2200-1- 2
	31 2300	Earthwork & Backfill	31 2300-1- 4
32		EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS	
	32 1200	Flexible Paving.....	32 1200-1- 4
	32 3113	Fencing	32 3113-1- 3
	32 9000	Lawn and Plantings.....	32 9000-1- 2

Drawings Index

ARCHITECTURAL DRAWINGS

U-1.1	SITE UTILITY PLAN – NEW WORK
T-1.0	TITLE SHEET - JOB INFORMATION - JOB LOCATION
C-1.0	SITE PLAN DEMO
C-1.1	SITE PLAN
C-1.2	SITE PLAN EXISTING CONDITIONS
SR-1.0	SAFETY REFERENCE PLAN
S-1.0	NEW ADDITIONS - FOUNDATION PLAN
S-1.1	NEW ADDITIONS - STRUCTURAL PLAN
S-1.2	NEW ADDITION - STRUCTURAL BEAMS
S-1.3	NEW ADDITION - STRUCTURAL STAIR DETAILS
S-1.4	NEW ADDITION - STRUCTURAL SCHEDULES
A-1.0	NEW CLASSROOM ADDITION - FLOOR PLAN
A-1.1	NEW CLASSROOM ADDITION - FLOOR PLAN
A-1.2	NEW CAFETERIA ADDITION - FLOOR PLAN
A-1.3	NEW CAFETERIA ADDITION - FLOOR PLAN
A-1.4	FINISH SCHEDULE AND MISCELLANEOUS
A-1.5	RESTROOM FLOOR PLAN AND ELEVATIONS
K-1.0	NEW ADDITION KITCHEN PLAN
K-1.1	NEW ADDITION KITCHEN PLAN

A-2.0	ELEVATIONS
A-3.0	NEW CLASSROOM ADDITION - SECTIONS
A-3.1	NEW CLASSROOM ADDITION - SECTIONS
A-3.2	NEW CAFETERIA ADDITION -SECTIONS
A-3.3	NEW CAFETERIA ADDITION - SECTIONS
A-3.4	NEW CLASSROOM ADDITION - SECTIONS
A-3.5	NEW CLASSROOM ADDITION - OVERALL SECTIONS
A-3.6	NEW CAFETERIA - OVERALL SECTIONS
A-3.7	NEW CLASSROOM ADDITION – STAIR SECTIONS
A-5.0	CASEWORK DETAILS
A-6.0	DOOR AND WINDOW SCHEDULE
A-7.0	REELECTED CEILING (NEW ADDITIONS)
R-1.0	ROOF PLAN & DETAILS
R-1.1	ROOF DETAILS

MECHANICAL, FIRE PROTECTION, ELECTRICAL AND PLUMBING DRAWINGS

PLUMBING:

DP-1.0	PLUMBING FLOOR PLAN –DEMO
DP-1.1	PLUMBING CRAWLSPACE PIPING PLAN – DEMO
DP-1.2	PARTIAL PLUMBING WASTE AND VENT PIPING PLAN – DEMO
P-0.0	PLUMBING SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS
P-1.0	PLUMBING FLOOR PLAN – NEW WORK
P-1.1	PARTIAL CRAWLSPACE WASTE AND VENT PIPING – NEW WORK
P-1.2	PARTIAL FIRST FLOOR WASTE AND VENT PIPING PLAN – NEW WORK
P-1.3	PARTIAL FIRST AND SECOND FLOOR PLANS WASTE AND VENT PIPING – NEW WORK
P-2.1	PARTIAL FIRST FLOOR HW & CW PLAN – NEW WORK
P-2.2	PARTIAL FIRST AND SECOND FLOOR HW & CW PIPING PLAN – NEW WORK
P-3.1	KITCHEN/CAFETERIA ROOF PIPING PLAN – NEW WORK
P-3.2	SECOND FLOOR ROOF PIPING PLAN – NEW WORK
P-3.3	NEW ROOF PLANS – NEW WORK
P-4.1	PLUMBING RISER DIAGRAMS
P-4.2	PLUMBING RISER DIAGRAMS
P-5.1	PLUMBING SCHEDULES
P-5.2	PLUMBING SCHEDULES
P-5.3	PLUMBING MISCELLANEOUS DETAILS

FIRE PROTECTION:

FP-0.0	FIRE PROTECTION SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS
FP-1.0	PARTIAL FLOOR PLAN – NEW WORK
FP-1.1	PARTIAL FIRST FLOOR PLAN – NEW WORK
FP-1.2	PARTIAL FIRST AND SECOND FLOOR PLANS – NEW WORK

FIRE ALARM:

FA-1.1	PARTIAL FIRST FLOOR FIRE ALARM PLAN – NEW WORK
FA-1.2	PARTIAL FIRST AND SECOND FLOOR FIRE ALARM PLAN – NEW WORK

MECHANICAL:

M-0.0	MECHANICAL SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS
M-1.0	MECHANICAL FLOOR PLAN – NEW WORK
M-1.1	PARTIAL FIRST FLOOR MECHANICAL PLAN – NEW WORK

M-1.2	PARTIAL FIRST AND SECOND FLOOR MECHANICAL PLANS- NEW WORK
M-1.3	PARTIAL FIRST AND SECOND FLOOR VENTILATION PLANS – NEW WORK
M-2.0	PARTIAL CRAWLSPACE MECHANICAL PIPING PLAN – NEW WORK
M-2.1	PARTIAL FIRST FLOOR MECHANICAL PIPING PLAN – NEW WORK
M-2.2	PARTIAL FIRST AND SECOND FLOOR MECHANICAL PIPING PLAN – NEW WORK
M-3.1	ENLARGED MECHANICAL FLOOR PLANS.
M-3.2	ENLARGED MECHANICAL FLOOR PLANS
M-4.1	MECHANICAL SCHEDULES
M-4.2	MECHANICAL SCHEDULES
M-4.3	MECHANICAL SCHEDULES
M-5.0	GEO DETAILS AND ISOMETRIC DIAGRAMS
M-5.1	MISC. MECHANICAL DETAILS
M-5.2	GEO WELL FIELDS DETAIL AND GEO RISERS.
TC-1.1	TEMPERATURE CONTROL
TC-1.2	TEMPERATURE CONTROL
TC-1.3	TEMPERATURE CONTROL

ELECTRICAL:

DE-1.0	ELECTRICAL FLOOR PLAN – DEMO
DE-1.1	PARTIAL ELECTRICAL FLOOR PLAN – DEMO
DE-1.2	PARTIAL ELECTRICAL FLOOR PLAN – DEMO
E-0.0	ELECTRICAL SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS
E-1.0	ELECTRICAL FLOOR PLAN – NEW WORK
E-1.1	ELECTRICAL CRAWLSPACE PLAN – NEW WORK
E-1.2	PARTIAL FIRST FLOOR LIGHTING PLAN – NEW WORK
E-1.3	PARTIAL FIRST AND SECOND FLOOR LIGHTING PLAN – NEW WORK
E-2.1	PARTIAL FIRST FLOOR POWER PLAN – NEW WORK
E-2.2	PARTIAL FIRST AND SECOND FLOOR POWER PLANS – NEW WORK
E-3.1	PARTIAL FIRST FLOOR MECH POWER PLAN – NEW WORK
E-3.2	PARTIAL FIRST AND SECOND FLOOR MECH POWER PLANS – NEW WORK
E-4.1	ELECTRICAL SCHEDULES
E-4.2	ELECTRICAL SCHEDULES
E-5.1	ONE LINE POWER PLAN AND MISC DETAILS

DOCUMENT LIABILITY

Middleton Associates Incorporated, expressly retains the copyright dated 2019 pursuant to adaptation and reuse, of any material, information, ideas, procedures, details, instructions and design configurations set forth in these project documents, for other than the limits and scope of this project, with or without the knowledge of Middleton Associates Incorporated. Any party or person violating this copyright shall bear all liability that may occur from use or misuse of such information. Permission is granted to copy and distribute these documents only for preparation of proposals and/or execution of a contract for this Project No. 2275 0217.

Copyright © 2019 Middleton Associates Incorporated
 END 00 0110

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
2. Transition fittings.
3. Dielectric fittings.
4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
5. Sleeves.
6. Escutcheons.
7. Grout.
8. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
9. Painting and finishing.
10. Supports and anchorages.

1.3. DEFINITIONS

- A. Provide: Furnish and install material, equipment, accessories, trim, supports, anchors, labor and etc. to complete the scope of work to provide a functioning component or completed system.
- B. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- C. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- D. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- E. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and chases.
- F. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- G. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
1. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
 2. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

H. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:

1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4. SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Transition fittings.
2. Dielectric fittings.
3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
4. Escutcheons.

B. Welding certificates.

1.5. QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

C. Electrical Characteristics for HVAC Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

1.6. DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7. COORDINATION

A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for HVAC installations.

B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.

C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for HVAC items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 8 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the manufacturers specified.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2. PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 15 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.3. JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 15 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
 - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- H. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
 - 1. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.

2.4. DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - e. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Calpico, Inc.
 - b. Lochinvar Corp.

G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Perfection Corp.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Victaulic Co. of America.

2.5. MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel Include two for each sealing element.
4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.6. SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.7. ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
 - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
 - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed hinge, set screw and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

2.8. GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, non-staining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
 - 1. New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with rough-brass finish.
 - h. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
 - i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw.
 - j. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
- M. Sleeves are required for core-drilled holes.
- N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.

2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
 - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).
 - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
 - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Refer to Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
 - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
- Q. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.
 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches (150 mm) and larger in diameter.
 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- R. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- S. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for materials.
- T. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- U. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

3.2. PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 15 Sections specifying piping systems.

- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

3.3. PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
 - 4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

3.4. EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install HVAC equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

3.5. PAINTING

- A. Painting of HVAC systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 9 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.6. CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
 - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
 - 2. Install #4 dowel rods (Pins) to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 12-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
 - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 7. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa) 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as with #4 rebar on 12" centers in both directions, chamfer all exposed edges.
 - 8. Reinforce concrete pad with #4 rebar on 12" centers in each direction with minimum of 3" of coverage along the edge of the pad size.

3.7. ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.8. GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for HVAC equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.

G. Place grout around anchors.

H. Cure placed grout.

END 23 0500

DIVISION 23 – MECHANICAL
Section 23 05 13 - Common Motor Requirements For HVAC Equipment

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3. COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2. MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet (1000 m) above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3. POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
 - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.

2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4. POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers:
 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width modulated inverters.
 2. Energy- and Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.5. SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
 2. Split phase.
 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

3. EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END 23 0513

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 5. Grout.

1.3. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- G. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.2. STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.

2.3. SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel or Stainless steel.
 - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4. SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5. GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
 - 3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2. STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3. SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4. SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5. SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150) Cast-iron wall sleeves, Galvanized-steel wall sleeves, Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves, Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves.

2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150) Cast-iron wall sleeves, Galvanized-steel wall sleeves, Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves, Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - c. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150) Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system or Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system or Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150) Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves or PVC-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves PVC-pipe sleeves.

5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150) Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves or PVC-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END 23 0517

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor plates.

1.3. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2. FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:

- a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
- 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
 - 2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

3.2. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END 23 0518

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Filled-system thermometers.
2. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
3. Thermowells.
4. Dial-type pressure gages.
5. Gage attachments.
6. Test plugs.
7. Test-plug kits.
8. Sight flow indicators.

B. Related Sections:

1.3. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4. INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.

1.5. CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. FILLED-SYSTEM THERMOMETERS

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Vapor-Actuated Thermometers:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Case: Sealed type, cast aluminum or drawn steel 5-inch (127-mm) nominal diameter.
3. Element: Bourdon tube or other type of pressure element.
4. Movement: Mechanical, dampening type, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
5. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
6. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.

7. Window: Glass.
8. Ring: Stainless steel.
9. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable, 180 degrees in vertical plane, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Thermal System: Liquid-filled bulb in copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass stem and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
 - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
11. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

2.2. LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Case: Cast aluminum 6-inch (152-mm) nominal size.
3. Case Form: Back angle unless otherwise indicated.
4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
6. Window: Glass or plastic.
7. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
 - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
8. Connector: 3/4 inch (19 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

B. Plastic-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Case: Plastic 6-inch (152-mm) nominal size.
3. Case Form: Back angle unless otherwise indicated.
4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
5. Tube Background: Nonreflective with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
6. Window: Glass or plastic.
7. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
 - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
8. Connector: 3/4 inch (19 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

C. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Case: Cast aluminum 9-inch (229-mm) nominal size unless otherwise indicated.
3. Case Form: Adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.

4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
6. Window: Glass.
7. Stem: Aluminum and of length to suit installation.
 - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
 - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
8. Connector: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.3. DUCT-THERMOMETER MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Description: Flanged bracket with screw holes, for attachment to air duct and made to hold thermometer stem.

2.4. THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR.
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, (DN 15, DN 20, or NPS 25,) ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch (13, 19, and 25 mm), with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

- B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.5. PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Standard: ASME B40.100.
2. Case: Liquid-filled type(s); cast aluminum 6-inch (152-mm) nominal diameter.
3. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
4. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15). ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
5. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
6. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
7. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
8. Window: Glass.

9. Ring: Stainless steel.
10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.6. GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Siphons: Loop-shaped section of brass or steel pipe with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) pipe threads.
- C. Valves: Brass ball with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15) ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

2.7. TEST PLUGS

- A. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- B. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- C. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 (DN 8) or NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- D. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F (3450 kPa at 93 deg C)
- E. Core Inserts: EPDM self-sealing rubber.

2.8. TEST-PLUG KITS

- A. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing two thermometer(s), one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
- B. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- (25- to 51-mm-) diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F (minus 18 to plus 104 deg C).
- C. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- (51- to 76-mm-) diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig (0 to 1380 kPa).
- D. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

2.9. SIGHT FLOW INDICATORS

- A. Description: Piping inline-installation device for visual verification of flow.
- B. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with sight glass and ball, flapper, or paddle wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.
- C. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1034 kPa).
- D. Minimum Temperature Rating: 200 deg F (93 deg C).
- E. End Connections for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded.

F. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install remote-mounted thermometer bulbs in thermowells and install cases on panels; connect cases with tubing and support tubing to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- G. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.
- H. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- I. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- J. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).
- K. Install valve and syphon fitting in piping for each pressure gage for steam.
- L. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- M. Install flow indicators in piping systems in accessible positions for easy viewing.
- N. Assemble and install connections, tubing, and accessories between flow-measuring elements and flowmeters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- O. Install flowmeter elements in accessible positions in piping systems.
- P. Install wafer-orifice flowmeter elements between pipe flanges.
- Q. Install differential-pressure-type flowmeter elements, with at least minimum straight lengths of pipe, upstream and downstream from element according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- R. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.
- S. Install connection fittings in accessible locations for attachment to portable indicators.
- T. Mount thermal-energy meters on wall if accessible; if not, provide brackets to support meters.
- U. Install thermometers in the following locations:

1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
2. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
3. Outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts.

V. Install pressure gages in the following locations:

1. Discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
2. Suction and discharge of each pump.

3.2. CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.
- B. Connect flowmeter-system elements to meters.
- C. Connect flowmeter transmitters to meters.
- D. Connect thermal-energy meter transmitters to meters.

3.3. ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4. THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone shall be one of the following:
 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
 2. Direct-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
 3. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
 4. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- B. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units and built-up central systems shall be one of the following:
 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
 2. Direct-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
 3. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
 4. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- C. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.5. THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 50 to 400 deg F and 0 to 200 deg C.
- B. Scale Range for Ground Source Piping: 0 to 125 deg F.

3.6. PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each pump shall be[one of] the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled direct mounted, metal case.
 - 2. Sealed direct-mounted, plastic case.
 - 3. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.

3.7. PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa.
- B. Scale Range for Ground Source-Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 600 kPa.

3.8. FLOWMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Flowmeters for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: Pitot-tube type.
- B. Flowmeters for Ground Source Piping: Pitot - Tube type.

END 23 0519

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Brass ball valves.
- 2. Bronze ball valves.

1.3. DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1.5. DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

- 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
- 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and weld ends.
- 3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.

- B. Use the following precautions during storage:

- 1. Maintain valve end protection.
- 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

- B. ASME Compliance:

- 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.

2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 3. ASME B16.5 for flanges on steel valves.
 4. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 5. ASME B16.18 for solder-joint connections.
 6. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 7. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- D. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Actuator Types:
1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger.
 2. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves smaller than NPS 4 (DN 100).
- H. Valves in Insulated Piping:
1. Include 2-inch (50-mm) stem extensions.
 2. Extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking the vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
 3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.
- I. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2. BRASS BALL VALVES

- A. One-Piece Brass Ball Valves:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
 - c. Body Design: One piece.
 - d. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Brass.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - i. Port: Reduced.
- B. Two-Piece Brass Ball Valves with Full Port and Brass Trim:
1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).

- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Forged brass.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Brass.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.

C. Two-Piece Brass Ball Valves with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Forged brass.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.

D. Two-Piece Brass Ball Valves with Regular Port and Brass Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Forged brass.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Brass.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Regular.

E. Two-Piece Brass Ball Valves with Regular Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Regular.

F. Three-Piece Brass Ball Valves with Full Port and Brass Trim:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
 - d. Body Design: Three piece.
 - e. Body Material: Forged brass.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.
 - g. Seats: PTFE.
 - h. Stem: Brass.
 - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - j. Port: Full.

2.3. BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. One-Piece Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
 - c. Body Design: One piece.
 - d. Body Material: Bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Bronze.
 - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - i. Port: Reduced.

B. One-Piece Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
 - c. Body Design: One piece.
 - d. Body Material: Bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Seats: PTFE.
 - g. Stem: Stainless steel.
 - h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
 - i. Port: Reduced.

C. Two-Piece Bronze Ball Valves with Full Port and Bronze or Brass Trim:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
 - d. Body Design: Two piece.
 - e. Body Material: Bronze.
 - f. Ends: Threaded.

- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Bronze.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.

D. Two-Piece Bronze Ball Valves with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.

E. Two-Piece Bronze Ball Valves with Regular Port and Bronze or Brass Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Bronze.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Regular.

F. Two-Piece Bronze Ball Valves with Regular Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Regular.

2.4. STEEL BALL VALVES

A. Class 150 Steel Ball Valves with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
- b. CWP Rating: 285 psig (1964 kPa).
- c. Body Design: Split body.
- d. Body Material: Carbon steel, ASTM A 216, Type WCB.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- i. Port: Full.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully close. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2. VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

3.3. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.

- B. Select valves with the following end connections:
1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.
 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends.
 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.

3.4. GROUND SOURCE VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: One or Two piece, full port, and bronze with stainless-steel trim.
1. Valves may be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Iron ball valves.
1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 2. Steel Ball Valves: Class 150.

END 23 0523.12

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Bronze lift check valves.
- 2. Bronze swing check valves.
- 3. Iron swing check valves.
- 4. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves.

1.3. DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1.5. DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
 - 3. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
 - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
 - 2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
 - 3. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 4. ASME B16.18 for solder joint.
 - 5. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 - 6. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- D. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2. BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

- A. Class 125 Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: Bronze.
- B. Class 125 Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: NBR or PTFE.

2.3. BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: PTFE.

C. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: Bronze.

D. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: PTFE.

2.4. IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 - d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - f. Ends: Flanged.
 - g. Trim: Bronze.

h. Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
- e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- f. Ends: Flanged.
- g. Trim: Composition.
- h. Seat Ring: Bronze.
- i. Disc Holder: Bronze.
- j. Disc: PTFE.
- k. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.5. IRON, CENTER-GUIDED CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
- e. Style: Compact wafer.
- f. Seat: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 200 psig (1380 kPa).
- c. NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
- e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
- f. Ends: Flanged.
- g. Seat: Bronze.

C. Class 150, Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
- b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
- c. NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Style: Compact wafer.
- f. Seat: Bronze.

D. Class 150, Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat:

1. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300), CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
 - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24 (DN 350 to DN 600), CWP Rating: 250 psig (1725 kPa).
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 395/A 395M or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
 - e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
 - f. Ends: Flanged.
 - g. Seat: Bronze.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully close. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2. VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
 2. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.
- F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements for valve tags and schedules in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.3. ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 - 1. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal-seat check valves.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
 - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules.
 - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules.
 - 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.
 - 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends.
 - 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules.
 - 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Flanged ends.

3.5. GROUND SOURCE-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
 - 1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
 - 2. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger:
 - 1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 - 2. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
 - 3. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12 (DN 65 to DN 300): Class 125, lever and spring.
 - 4. Iron, Grooved-End Check Valves, NPS 3 to NPS 12 (DN 80 to DN 300): 300 CWP.

END 23 0523.14

DIVISION 23 – MECHANICAL
Section 230529 - Hangers And Supports For HVAC Piping And Equipment

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
5. Fastener systems.
6. Pipe stands.
7. Equipment supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
2. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

1.3. DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.4. PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:

1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 2. Metal framing systems.
 3. Pipe stands.
 4. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.
- 1.6. INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Welding certificates.
- 1.7. QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
- C. Copper Pipe Hangers:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
 2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

2.2. TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3. THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig (688-kPa) minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig (688-kPa) minimum compressive strength.
- C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.4. FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened Portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless- steel anchors, for use in hardened Portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.5. PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Base: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- D. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
 - 5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.

- E. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.6. EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.7. MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Fiberglass Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with applicable portions of MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- D. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- E. Fiberglass Strut System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled fiberglass struts.
- F. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- G. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely

- cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Pipe Stand Installation:
1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- I. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- J. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- K. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- L. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- M. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- N. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- O. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- P. Insulated Piping:
1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
 - b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches (457 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.075 inch (1.91 mm) thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24 (DN 400 to DN 600): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) thick.
5. Pipes NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2. EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3. METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and] equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4. ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches (40 mm).

3.5. PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6. HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
 - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F (566 deg C), pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24 (DN 100 to DN 600), requiring up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
 - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36 (DN 20 to DN 900), requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
 - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 15 to DN 600) if little or no insulation is required.
 - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 15 to DN 100), to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.

6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8 (DN 20 to DN 200).
 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8 (DN 10 to DN 200).
 11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3 (DN 10 to DN 80).
 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 (DN 65 to DN 900) if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30 (DN 25 to DN 750), from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 65 to DN 600), from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 (DN 50 to DN 1050) if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 (DN 50 to DN 600) if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 (DN 50 to DN 750) if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600).
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 20 to DN 600) if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches (150 mm) for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.

3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb (340 kg).
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb (680 kg).
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb (1360 kg).
 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.

2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- O. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END 23 0529

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Equipment labels.
 2. Pipe labels.
 3. Duct labels.
 4. Valve tags.

1.3. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 2. Letter Color: Black
 3. Background Color: White
 4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
 5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
 6. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: Black.
3. Background Color: White.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2. PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.

B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semi-rigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

2.3. VALVE TAGS

A. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch (13-mm) numbers.

1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain or beaded chain.

- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2. GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

3.3. EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.4. PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet (7.6 m) in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- B. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
 - 1. Ground Source Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
 - 2. Refrigerant Piping: Black letters on a safety-orange background.

3.5. VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
 - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Ground Source Water: 2 inches (50 mm), square.
 - b. Refrigerant: 2 inches (50 mm), round.
 - 2. Valve-Tag Colors:
 - a. Toxic and Corrosive Fluids: Black letters on a safety-orange background.
 - b. Flammable Fluids: Black letters on a safety-yellow background.
 - c. Combustible Fluids: White letters on a safety-brown background.
 - d. Potable and Other Water: White letters on a safety-green background.
 - e. Defined by User: White letters on a safety-purple background, black letters on a safety-white background, white letters on a safety-gray background, and white letters on a safety-black background

END 23 0553

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Balancing Air Systems:
 - a. Variable-volume air ventilation systems.
- 2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:
 - a. Constant-flow hydronic systems.
 - b. Variable-flow hydronic systems.
 - c. Primary-secondary hydronic systems.
- 3. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:
 - a. Motors.
 - b. Heat Pumps
 - c. Pumps
 - d. DOAS Units
- 4. Testing, adjusting, and balancing existing systems and equipment.
- 5. Sound tests.
- 6. Vibration tests.
- 7. Duct leakage tests.
- 8. Control system verification.

1.3. DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. BAS: Building automation systems.
- C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- D. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- F. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- G. TDH: Total dynamic head.

1.4. PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. TAB Conference: If requested by the Owner, conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
 - 1. Minimum Agenda Items:
 - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
 - b. The TAB plan.
 - c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
 - d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

1.5. INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- F. Certified TAB reports.
- G. Sample report forms.
- H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
 - 1. Instrument type and make.
 - 2. Serial number.
 - 3. Application.
 - 4. Dates of use.
 - 5. Dates of calibration.

1.6. QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC, NEBB or TABB.
- B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."

- D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.7. FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.
- B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

2. PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

3. EXECUTION

3.1. EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
 - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.

- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens have been replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- L. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.
- M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2. PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
 - 1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
 - 2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
 - 3. Instrumentation to be used.
 - 4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
 - 1. Airside:
 - a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
 - b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
 - c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
 - d. Clean filters are installed.
 - e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
 - f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
 - g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 - h. Ceilings are installed.
 - i. Windows and doors are installed.
 - j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.
 - 2. Hydronics:
 - a. Verify leakage and pressure tests on water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
 - b. Piping is complete with terminals installed.
 - c. Water treatment is complete.
 - d. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.

- e. Strainers are pulled and cleaned.
- f. Control valves are functioning per the sequence of operation.
- g. Shutoff and balance valves have been verified to be 100 percent open.
- h. Pumps are started and proper rotation is verified.
- i. Pump gage connections are installed directly at pump inlet and outlet flanges or in discharge and suction pipe prior to valves or strainers.
- j. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
- k. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

3.3. GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance", NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" or SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
 - 2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
 - 3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.4. GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.

- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

3.5. PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - 1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
 - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
 - c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
 - d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
 - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
 - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
 - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
 - 3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 - 4. Obtain approval from Engineer for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 - 5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
 - 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 - 2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
 - 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.

1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.

D. Verify final system conditions.

1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
4. Mark all final settings.
5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
6. Measure and record all operating data.
7. Record final fan-performance data.

3.6. GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for pumps, coils, and heat exchangers. Obtain approved submittals and manufacturer-recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required coil and heat exchanger flow rates with pump design flow rate.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.
- C. In addition to requirements in "Preparation" Article, prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing as follows:
1. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
 2. Check highest vent for adequate pressure.
 3. Check flow-control valves for proper position.
 4. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
 5. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
 6. Check that air has been purged from the system.

3.7. PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
1. Measure total water flow.
 - a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
 2. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow, and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.

- e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
 - 3. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
- B. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 - 1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 - 2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 - 3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
 - 1. Measure flow at terminals.
 - 2. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 - 3. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 - 4. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 - 5. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
- D. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
 - 1. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 - 2. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- E. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
 - 1. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 - 2. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- F. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - 1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 - 2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - 3. Mark final settings.
- G. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.8. PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals, and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.
- B. Adjust the variable-flow hydronic system as follows:
 - 1. Verify that the differential-pressure sensor is located as indicated.
 - 2. Determine whether there is diversity in the system.
- C. For systems with no diversity:
 - 1. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.

- a. Measure total water flow.
 - 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
 - b. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
 - c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
2. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 - b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
 3. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow at terminals.
 - b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 - d. Position control valves to bypass the coil and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 - e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
 4. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
 - a. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 - b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
 5. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
 - a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 - b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
 6. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine the system differential-pressure set point.

7. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
 8. Mark final settings and verify that all memory stops have been set.
 9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
 - a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - c. Mark final settings.
 10. Verify that memory stops have been set.
- D. For systems with diversity:
1. Determine diversity factor.
 2. Simulate system diversity by closing required number of control valves, as approved by the design engineer.
 3. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
 - a. Measure total water flow.
 - 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
 - b. Measure pump TDH as follows:
 - 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
 - c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
 4. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 - b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
 5. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
 - a. Measure flow at terminals.

- b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 - c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 - d. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 - e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
6. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
- a. Measure differential pressure, and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 - b. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
7. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
- a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 - b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
8. Open control valves that were shut. Close a sufficient number of control valves that were previously open to maintain diversity, and balance terminals that were just opened.
9. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine system differential-pressure set point.
10. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
11. Mark final settings and verify that memory stops have been set.
12. Verify final system conditions as follows:
- a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
 - c. Mark final settings.
13. Verify that memory stops have been set.

3.9. PROCEDURES FOR PRIMARY-SECONDARY HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance the primary circuit flow first.
- B. Balance the secondary circuits after the primary circuits are complete.
- C. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
 - 1. Measure total water flow.
 - a. Position valves for full flow through coils.
 - b. Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
 - c. If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
 - 2. Measure pump TDH as follows:

- a. Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
 - b. Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
 - c. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
 - d. Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - e. With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
3. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
- D. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
1. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
 2. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
 3. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
- E. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
1. Measure flow at terminals.
 2. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
 3. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
 4. Position control valves to bypass the coil and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
 5. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
- F. For systems with pressure-independent valves at terminals:
1. Measure differential pressure and verify that it is within manufacturer's specified range.
 2. Perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- G. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
1. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
 2. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
- H. Verify final system conditions as follows:
1. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
 2. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
 3. Mark final settings.
- I. Verify that memory stops have been set.
- 3.10. PROCEDURES FOR HEAT PUMP UNITS
- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:
1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
 2. Water flow rate.

3. Water pressure drop for major (more than 20 gpm) equipment coils, excluding unitary equipment such as reheat coils, unit heaters, and fan-coil units.
4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
6. Airflow.

B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:

1. Nameplate data.
2. Airflow.
3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load.
5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

C. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each steam coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Airflow.
3. Inlet steam pressure.

D. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:

1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
3. Airflow.

3.11. DUCT LEAKAGE TESTS

- A. Witness the duct pressure testing performed by Installer.
- B. Verify that proper test methods are used and that leakage rates are within specified tolerances.
- C. Leakage allow no greater than 3%.
- D. Report deficiencies observed.

3.12. CONTROLS VERIFICATION

- A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:
 1. Verify temperature control system is operating within the design limitations.
 2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
 3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.
 4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
 5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
 6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
 7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
 8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
 9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.

- B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

3.13. TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
 - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 - 3. Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

3.14. PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare monthly progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.15. FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
 - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
 - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
 - 3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
 - 1. Pump curves.
 - 2. Fan curves.
 - 3. Manufacturers' test data.
 - 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
 - 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
 - 1. Title page.
 - 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
 - 3. Project name.
 - 4. Project location.
 - 5. Architect's name and address.

6. Engineer's name and address.
 7. Contractor's name and address.
 8. Report date.
 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 11. Summary of contents including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - e. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
 - f. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
 2. Water flow rates.
 3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
 4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
 5. Terminal units.
 6. Balancing stations.
 7. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Heat Pump Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Unit arrangement and class.
 - g. Discharge arrangement.
 - h. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
 - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
 - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - k. Number, type, and size of filters.

2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
 - f. Coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
 - g. Outdoor airflow in cfm (L/s).
 - h. Return airflow in cfm (L/s).
 - i. Outdoor-air damper position.
 - j. Return-air damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Coil type.
 - d. Number of rows.
 - e. Fin spacing in fins per inch (mm) o.c.
 - f. Make and model number.
 - g. Face area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
 - h. Tube size in NPS (DN).
 - i. Tube and fin materials.
 - j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - b. Average face velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - c. Air pressure drop in inches wg (Pa).
 - d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
 - e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
 - f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
 - g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
 - h. Water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
 - i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig (kPa).
 - j. Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
 - m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig (kPa).
 - n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - o. Inlet steam pressure in psig (kPa).

G. DOAS Unit Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Coil identification.
 - d. Capacity in Btu/h (kW).
 - e. Number of stages.
 - f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
 - g. Rated amperage.
 - h. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - i. Face area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
 - j. Minimum face velocity in fpm (m/s).

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Heat output in Btu/h (kW).
- b. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
- c. Air velocity in fpm (m/s).
- d. Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
- e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
- f. Voltage at each connection.
- g. Amperage for each phase.

H. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Arrangement and class.
 - g. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
 - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).

2. Motor Data:

- a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
- b. Horsepower and rpm.
- c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
- f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
- g. Number, make, and size of belts.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
- b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).

- c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
- I. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
- 1. Report Data:
 - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - e. Duct size in inches (mm).
 - f. Duct area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
 - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - h. Indicated velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - i. Actual airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - j. Actual average velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - k. Barometric pressure in psig (Pa).
- J. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:
- 1. Unit Data:
 - a. System and air-handling unit identification.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Apparatus used for test.
 - d. Area served.
 - e. Make.
 - f. Number from system diagram.
 - g. Type and model number.
 - h. Size.
 - i. Effective area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
 - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - b. Air velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm (L/s).
 - d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm (m/s).
 - e. Final airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - f. Final velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - g. Space temperature in deg F (deg C).
- K. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:
- 1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Service.
 - d. Make and size.
 - e. Model number and serial number.

- f. Water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
- g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig (kPa).
- h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig (kPa).
- i. Pump rpm.
- j. Impeller diameter in inches (mm).
- k. Motor make and frame size.
- l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
- m. Voltage at each connection.
- n. Amperage for each phase.
- o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- p. Seal type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Static head in feet of head or psig (kPa).
- b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
- c. Actual impeller size in inches (mm).
- d. Full-open flow rate in gpm (L/s).
- e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
- f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
- g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
- h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
- i. Final water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
- j. Voltage at each connection.
- k. Amperage for each phase.

L. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

- a. Instrument type and make.
- b. Serial number.
- c. Application.
- d. Dates of use.
- e. Dates of calibration.

3.16. VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Engineer and Owner.
- B. Engineer shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- E. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:

1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
3. If the second verification also fails, Engineer may contact AABC Headquarters regarding the AABC National Performance Guaranty.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.17. ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END 23 0593

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
4. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
5. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
6. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
2. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

1.3. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.4. QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.5. DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6. COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.7. SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK

jacket Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

- H. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2. FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

- A. Fire-Rated Board: Structural-grade, press-molded, xonolite calcium silicate, fireproofing board suitable for operating temperatures up to 1700 deg F (927 deg C). Comply with ASTM C 656, Type II, Grade 6. Tested and certified to provide a [1] [2]-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a [1] [2]-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.3. ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.4. MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 4. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.03 metric perm) at 35-mil (0.9-mm) dry film thickness.
 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
 4. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
 4. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms (1.2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
 3. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
 4. Color: White.

2.5. LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
 3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
 4. Color: White.

2.6. SEALANTS

- A. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
4. Color: White.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.7. FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 1. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
 2. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

2.8. FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a cross laminated polyethylene film covered with white aluminum-foil facing.

2.9. TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
 1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
 1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 2. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

2.10. SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
2. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- (3.5-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- (3.5-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) galvanized carbon-steel washer.
3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, and securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
 - b. Spindle: Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
4. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, and securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
 - b. Spindle: Stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - c. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
5. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
 - a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
6. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.

- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2. PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3. GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at [2 inches (50 mm)] [4 inches (100 mm)] o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4. PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
 - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5. INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturers recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.6. INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
 - 1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 - 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 - 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), place pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not over compress insulation during installation.
 - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 - 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with

insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

- a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).
5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches (450 mm) o.c.
 6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), space pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not over compress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or

field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

- a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).
5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

3.7. FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

3.8. FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.
- B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.
- C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.9. FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
 - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.10. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.11. DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
 - 1. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
 - 2. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.
- B. Items Not Insulated:
 - 1. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
 - 2. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.

3. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
4. Flexible connectors.
5. Vibration-control devices.
6. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.12. INDOOR DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE

1. See insulation schedule on drawings.

B. Concealed, round and flat-oval, return-air duct insulation shall be the following:

END 23 0713

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:
 - 1. Condensate drain piping, indoors.
 - 2. Ground Source water piping, indoors.
 - 3. Refrigerant suction and hot-gas piping, indoors and outdoors.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."

1.3. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
 - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.4. INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5. QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
 - 3. Demolish and remove mockups when directed.

1.6. DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7. COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8. SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
- G. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
 - 1. Type I, 850 deg F (454 deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- H. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe Insulation Wicking System: Preformed pipe insulation complying with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with absorbent cloth factory-applied to the entire inside surface of preformed pipe insulation and extended through the longitudinal joint to outside surface of insulation under insulation jacket. Factory apply a white, polymer, vapor-retarder jacket with self-sealing adhesive tape seam and evaporation holes running continuously along the longitudinal seam, exposing the absorbent cloth.
- I. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semi-rigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m) or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F (55 deg C) is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.042 W/m x K) or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2. INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

2.3. ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F (10 to 427 deg C).
 - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

- C. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F (minus 73 to plus 93 deg C).
 - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- F. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- G. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
 - 1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.4. MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.

1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 4. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.03 metric perm) at 35-mil (0.9-mm) dry film thickness.
 2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
 4. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
 4. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms (1.2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
 3. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
 4. Color: White.

2.5. LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
 3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
 4. Color: White.

2.6. SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants:
1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass and Polyisocyanurate Products: Subject to compliance with requirements,
 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.

4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 149 deg C).
 5. Color: White or gray.
 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
 4. Color: White.
 5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.7. FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 2. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
 3. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- (0.10-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perm (0.013 metric perm) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
 4. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perm (0.007 metric perm) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.

2.8. FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd. (271 g/sq. m).

2.9. FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 2. Color: White.
 3. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- D. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a cross laminated polyethylene film covered with stucco-embossed aluminum-foil facing.

2.10. TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 2. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
 2. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
 2. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
 3. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
 4. Elongation: 5 percent.
 5. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.

- E. PVDC Tape for Outdoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 - 2. Film Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
 - 3. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
 - 4. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch (10.1 N/mm) in width.

2.11. SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 3/4 inch (19 mm)] wide with closed seal.
 - 2. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 3/4 inch (19 mm)] wide with closed seal.
 - 3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- C. Wire: 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
 - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2. PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F (60 and 149 deg C). Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
 - 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F (0 and 149 deg C) with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3. GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.

3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at [2 inches (50 mm)] [4 inches (100 mm)] o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 4. Manholes.
 5. Handholes.
 6. Cleanouts.

3.4. PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor

- insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5. GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.

6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm) over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
 5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6. INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturers recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.

4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturers recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.7. INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
 2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
 3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8. FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturers recommended adhesive.
1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

3.9. FINISHES

- A. Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.10. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.11. PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
 - 2. Underground piping.
 - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.12. INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- 1. See insulation schedule on drawings.

3.13. OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inches (25 mm) thick.

3.14. OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Exposed: Refrigerant Piping.
 - 1. PVC: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick.

END 23 0719

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. DDC system for monitoring and controlling of HVAC systems.
- 2. Delivery of selected control devices to equipment and systems manufacturers for factory installation and to HVAC systems installers for field installation.

1.3. DEFINITIONS

- A. Algorithm: A logical procedure for solving a recurrent mathematical problem. A prescribed set of well-defined rules or processes for solving a problem in a finite number of steps.
- B. Analog: A continuously varying signal value, such as current, flow, pressure, or temperature.
- C. BACnet Specific Definitions:
 - 1. BACnet: Building Automation Control Network Protocol, ASHRAE 135. A communications protocol allowing devices to communicate data over and services over a network.
 - 2. BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBBs): BIBB defines a small portion of BACnet functionality that is needed to perform a particular task. BIBBs are combined to build the BACnet functional requirements for a device.
 - 3. BACnet/IP: Defines and allows using a reserved UDP socket to transmit BACnet messages over IP networks. A BACnet/IP network is a collection of one or more IP subnetworks that share the same BACnet network number.
 - 4. BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL): Organization responsible for testing products for compliance with ASHRAE 135, operated under direction of BACnet International.
 - 5. PICS (Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement): Written document that identifies the particular options specified by BACnet that are implemented in a device.
- D. Binary: Two-state signal where a high signal level represents "ON" or "OPEN" condition and a low signal level represents "OFF" or "CLOSED" condition. "Digital" is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary" to indicate a two-state signal.
- E. Controller: Generic term for any standalone, microprocessor-based, digital controller residing on a network, used for local or global control. Three types of controllers are indicated: Network Controller, Programmable Application Controller, and Application-Specific Controller.
- F. Control System Integrator: An entity that assists in expansion of existing enterprise system and support of additional operator interfaces to I/O being added to existing enterprise system.

- G. COV: Changes of value.
- H. DDC System Provider: Authorized representative of, and trained by, DDC system manufacturer and responsible for execution of DDC system Work indicated.
- I. Distributed Control: Processing of system data is decentralized and control decisions are made at subsystem level. System operational programs and information are provided to remote subsystems and status is reported back. On loss of communication, subsystems shall be capable of operating in a standalone mode using the last best available data.
- J. DOCSIS: Data-Over Cable Service Interface Specifications.
- K. E/P: Voltage to pneumatic.
- L. Gateway: Bidirectional protocol translator that connects control systems that use different communication protocols.
- M. HLC: Heavy load conditions.
- N. I/O: System through which information is received and transmitted. I/O refers to analog input (AI), binary input (BI), analog output (AO) and binary output (BO). Analog signals are continuous and represent control influences such as flow, level, moisture, pressure, and temperature. Binary signals convert electronic signals to digital pulses (values) and generally represent two-position operating and alarm status. "Digital," (DI and (DO), is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary," (BI) and (BO), respectively.
- O. I/P: Current to pneumatic.
- P. LAN: Local area network.
- Q. LNS: LonWorks Network Services.
- R. LON Specific Definitions:
 1. FTT-10: Echelon Transmitter-Free Topology Transceiver.
 2. LonMark: Association comprising suppliers and installers of LonTalk products. Association provides guidelines for implementing LonTalk protocol to ensure interoperability through a standard or consistent implementation.
 3. LonTalk: An open standard protocol developed by the Echelon Corporation that uses a "Neuron Chip" for communication. LonTalk is a register trademark of Echelon.
 4. LonWorks: Network technology developed by Echelon.
 5. Node: Device that communicates using CEA-709.1-C protocol and that is connected to a CEA-709.1-C network.
 6. Node Address: The logical address of a node on the network, consisting of a Domain number, Subnet number, and Node number. "Node number" portion of an address is a number assigned to device during installation, is unique within a subnet, and is not a factory-set unique Node ID.
 7. Node ID: A unique 48-bit identifier assigned at factory to each CEA-709.1-C device. Sometimes called a "Neuron ID."
 8. Program ID: An identifier (number) stored in a device (usually EEPROM) that identifies node manufacturer, functionality of device (application and sequence), transceiver used, and intended device usage.
 9. Standard Configuration Property Type (SCPT): Pronounced "skip-it." A standard format type maintained by LonMark International for configuration properties.

10. Standard Network Variable Type (SNVT): Pronounced "snivet." A standard format type maintained by LonMark used to define data information transmitted and received by individual nodes. "SNVT" is used in two ways. It is an acronym for "Standard Network Variable Type" and is often used to indicate a network variable itself (i.e., it can mean "a network variable of a standard network variable type").
 11. Subnet: Consists of a logical grouping of up to 127 nodes, where logical grouping is defined by node addressing. Each subnet is assigned a number, which is unique within a Domain. See "Node Address."
 12. TP/FT-10: Free Topology Twisted Pair network defined by CEA-709.3 and is most common media type for a CEA-709.1-C control network.
 13. TP/XF-1250: High-speed, 1.25-Mbps, twisted-pair, doubly terminated bus network defined by "LonMark Interoperability Guidelines" typically used only to connect multiple TP/FT-10 networks.
 14. User-Defined Configuration Property Type (UCPT): Pronounced "U-Keep-It." A Configuration Property format type that is defined by device manufacturer.
 15. User-Defined Network Variable Type (UNVT): Network variable format defined by device manufacturer. UNVTs create non-standard communications that other vendors' devices may not correctly interpret and may negatively impact system operation. UNVTs are not allowed.
- S. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- T. Modbus TCP/IP: An open protocol for exchange of process data.
- U. MS/TP: Master-slave/token-passing, IEE 8802-3. Datalink protocol LAN option that uses twisted-pair wire for low-speed communication.
- V. MTBF: Mean time between failures.
- W. Network Controller: Digital controller, which supports a family of programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers that communicates on peer-to-peer network for transmission of global data.
- X. Network Repeater: Device that receives data packet from one network and rebroadcasts it to another network. No routing information is added to protocol.
- Y. PDA: Personal digital assistant.
- Z. Peer to Peer: Networking architecture that treats all network stations as equal partners.
- AA. POT: Portable operator's terminal.
- BB. PUE: Performance usage effectiveness.
- CC. RAM: Random access memory.
- DD. RF: Radio frequency.
- EE. Router: Device connecting two or more networks at network layer.
- FF. Server: Computer used to maintain system configuration, historical and programming database.
- GG. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol incorporated into Microsoft Windows.

HH. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.

II. USB: Universal Serial Bus.

JJ. User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol assumes that the IP is used as the underlying protocol.

KK. VAV: Variable air volume.

LL. WLED: White light emitting diode.

1.4. ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Multiple Submissions:

1. If multiple submissions are required to execute work within schedule, first submit a coordinated schedule clearly defining intent of multiple submissions. Include a proposed date of each submission with a detailed description of submittal content to be included in each submission.
2. Clearly identify each submittal requirement indicated and in which submission the information will be provided.
3. Include an updated schedule in each subsequent submission with changes highlighted to easily track the changes made to previous submitted schedule.

B. Product Data: For each type of product include the following:

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
4. Installation, operation and maintenance instructions including factors effecting performance.
5. Bill of materials of indicating quantity, manufacturer, and extended model number for each unique product.
 - a. Operator workstations.
 - b. Servers.
 - c. Printers.
 - d. Gateways.
 - e. Routers.
 - f. Protocol analyzers.
 - g. DDC controllers.
 - h. Enclosures.
 - i. Electrical power devices.
 - j. UPS units.
 - k. Accessories.
 - l. Instruments.
 - m. Control dampers and actuators.
 - n. Control valves and actuators.

6. When manufacturer's product datasheets apply to a product series rather than a specific product model, clearly indicate and highlight only applicable information.
7. Each submitted piece of product literature shall clearly cross reference specification and drawings that submittal is to cover.

C. Software Submittal:

1. Cross-referenced listing of software to be loaded on each operator workstation, server, gateway and DDC controller.
2. Description and technical data of all software provided, and cross-referenced to products in which software will be installed.
3. Operating system software, operator interface and programming software, color graphic software, DDC controller software, maintenance management software, and third-party software.
4. Include a flow diagram and an outline of each subroutine that indicates each program variable name and units of measure.
5. Listing and description of each engineering equation used with reference source.
6. Listing and description of each constant used in engineering equations and a reference source to prove origin of each constant.
7. Description of operator interface to alphanumeric and graphic programming.
8. Description of each network communication protocol.
9. Description of system database, including all data included in database, database capacity and limitations to expand database.
10. Description of each application program and device drivers to be generated, including specific information on data acquisition and control strategies showing their relationship to system timing, speed, processing burden and system throughout.
11. Controlled Systems: Instrumentation list with element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data. Include written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.

D. Shop Drawings:

1. General Requirements:
 - a. Include cover drawing with Project name, location, Owner, Architect, Contractor and issue date with each Shop Drawings submission.
 - b. Include a drawing index sheet listing each drawing number and title that matches information in each title block.
 - c. Prepare Drawings using CAD.
 - d. Drawings Size: 24" x 36".
2. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details where applicable.
3. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
4. Detail means of vibration isolation and show attachments to rotating equipment.
5. Plan Drawings indicating the following:
 - a. Screened backgrounds of walls, structural grid lines, HVAC equipment, ductwork and piping.
 - b. Room names and numbers with coordinated placement to avoid interference with control products indicated.
 - c. Each desktop operator workstation, server, gateway, router, DDC controller, control panel instrument connecting to DDC controller, and damper and valve connecting to DDC controller, if included in Project.

- d. Exact placement of products in rooms, ducts, and piping to reflect proposed installed condition.
 - e. Network communication cable and raceway routing.
 - f. Information, drawn to scale, of 1/8".
 - g. Proposed routing of wiring, cabling, conduit, and tubing, coordinated with building services for review before installation.
6. Schematic drawings for each controlled HVAC system indicating the following:
- a. I/O points labeled with point names shown. Indicate instrument range, normal operating set points, and alarm set points. Indicate fail position of each damper and valve, if included in Project.
 - b. I/O listed in table format showing point name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and cross-reference to product data sheet number.
 - c. A graphic showing location of control I/O in proper relationship to HVAC system.
 - d. Wiring diagram with each I/O point having a unique identification and indicating labels for all wiring terminals.
 - e. Unique identification of each I/O that shall be consistently used between different drawings showing same point.
 - f. Elementary wiring diagrams of controls for HVAC equipment motor circuits including interlocks, switches, relays and interface to DDC controllers.
 - g. Narrative sequence of operation.
 - h. Graphic sequence of operation, showing all inputs and output logical blocks.
7. Control panel drawings indicating the following:
- a. Panel dimensions, materials, size, and location of field cable, raceways, and tubing connections.
 - b. Interior subpanel layout, drawn to scale and showing all internal components, cabling and wiring raceways, nameplates and allocated spare space.
 - c. Front, rear, and side elevations and nameplate legend.
 - d. Unique drawing for each panel.
8. DDC system network riser diagram indicating the following:
- a. Each device connected to network with unique identification for each.
 - b. Interconnection of each different network in DDC system.
 - c. For each network, indicate communication protocol, speed and physical means of interconnecting network devices, such as copper cable type, or fiber-optic cable type. Indicate raceway type and size for each.
 - d. Each network port for connection of an operator workstation or other type of operator interface with unique identification for each.
9. DDC system electrical power riser diagram indicating the following:
- a. Each point of connection to field power with requirements (volts/phase/hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
 - b. Each control power supply including, as applicable, transformers, power-line conditioners, transient voltage suppression and high filter noise units, DC power supplies, and UPS units with unique identification for each.
 - c. Each product requiring power with requirements (volts/phase/hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
 - d. Power wiring type and size, race type, and size for each.

10. Monitoring and control signal diagrams indicating the following:
 - a. Control signal cable and wiring between controllers and I/O.
 - b. Point-to-point schematic wiring diagrams for each product.
 11. Color graphics indicating the following:
 - a. Itemized list of color graphic displays to be provided.
 - b. For each display screen to be provided, a true color copy showing layout of pictures, graphics and data displayed.
 - c. Intended operator access between related hierarchical display screens.
- E. System Description:
1. Full description of DDC system architecture, network configuration, operator interfaces and peripherals, servers, controller types and applications, gateways, routers and other network devices, and power supplies.
 2. Complete listing and description of each report, log and trend for format and timing and events which initiate generation.
 3. System and product operation under each potential failure condition including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Loss of power.
 - b. Loss of network communication signal.
 - c. Loss of controller signals to inputs and outpoints.
 - d. Operator workstation failure.
 - e. Server failure.
 - f. Gateway failure.
 - g. Network failure
 - h. Controller failure.
 - i. Instrument failure.
 - j. Control damper and valve actuator failure.
 4. Complete bibliography of documentation and media to be delivered to Owner.
 5. Description of testing plans and procedures.
 6. Description of Owner training.
- F. Delegated-Design Submittal: For DDC system products and installation indicated as being delegated.
1. Supporting documentation showing DDC system design complies with performance requirements indicated, including calculations and other documentation necessary to prove compliance.
 2. Schedule and design calculations for control valves and actuators.
 - a. Flow at Project design and minimum flow conditions.
 - b. Pressure-differential drop across valve at Project design flow condition.
 - c. Maximum system pressure-differential drop (pump close-off pressure) across valve at Project minimum flow condition.
 - d. Design and minimum control valve coefficient with corresponding valve position.
 - e. Maximum close-off pressure.
 - f. Leakage flow at maximum system pressure differential.
 - g. Torque required at worst case condition for sizing actuator.
 - h. Actuator selection indicating torque provided.

- i. Actuator signal to control damper (on, close or modulate).
- j. Actuator position on loss of power.
- k. Actuator position on loss of control signal.

G. Qualification Data:

1. Systems Provider Qualification Data:

- a. Resume of project manager assigned to Project.
- b. Resumes of application engineering staff assigned to Project.
- c. Resumes of installation and programming technicians assigned to Project.
- d. Resumes of service technicians assigned to Project.
- e. Brief description of past project including physical address, floor area, number of floors, building system cooling and heating capacity and building's primary function.
- f. Description of past project DDC system, noting similarities to Project scope and complexity indicated.
- g. Names of staff assigned to past project that will also be assigned to execute work of this Project.
- h. Owner contact information for past project including name, phone number, and e-mail address.

2. Manufacturer's qualification data.

3. Testing agency's qualifications data.

H. Welding certificates.

I. Product Certificates:

- 1. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certifying that each proposed DDC system component complies with ASHRAE 135.
- 2. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certifying that each proposed DDC system component complies with LonWorks.

J. Preconstruction Test Reports: For each separate test performed.

K. Source quality-control reports.

L. Field quality-control reports.

M. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

1.5. CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For DDC system to include in emergency, operation and maintenance manuals.

- 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Project Record Drawings of as-built versions of submittal Shop Drawings provided in electronic PDF format.
 - b. Testing and commissioning reports and checklists of completed final versions of reports, checklists, and trend logs.
 - c. As-built versions of submittal Product Data.

- d. Names, addresses, e-mail addresses and 24-hour telephone numbers of Installer and service representatives for DDC system and products.
- e. Operator's manual with procedures for operating control systems including logging on and off, handling alarms, producing point reports, trending data, overriding computer control and changing set points and variables.
- f. Programming manuals with description of programming language and syntax, of statements for algorithms and calculations used, of point database creation and modification, of program creation and modification, and of editor use.
- g. Engineering, installation, and maintenance manuals that explain how to:
 - 1) Design and install new points, panels, and other hardware.
 - 2) Perform preventive maintenance and calibration.
 - 3) Debug hardware problems.
 - 4) Repair or replace hardware.
- h. Documentation of all programs created using custom programming language including set points, tuning parameters, and object database.
- i. Backup copy of graphic files, programs, and database on electronic media such as DVDs.
- j. List of recommended spare parts with part numbers and suppliers.
- k. Complete original-issue documentation, installation, and maintenance information for furnished third-party hardware including computer equipment and sensors.
- l. Complete original-issue copies of furnished software, including operating systems, custom programming language, operator workstation software, and graphics software.
- m. Licenses, guarantees, and warranty documents.
- n. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for system components, including schedule of tasks such as inspection, cleaning, and calibration; time between tasks; and task descriptions.
- o. Owner training materials.

1.6. MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials and parts that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
- B. Include product manufacturers' recommended parts lists for proper product operation over four year period following warranty period. Parts list shall be indicated for each year.
- C. Furnish parts, as indicated by manufacturer's recommended parts list, for product operation during two year period following warranty period.
- D. Furnish quantity indicated of matching product(s) in Project inventory for each unique size and type of following:
 - 1. Network Controller: One.
 - 2. Programmable Application Controller: One.
 - 3. Room Moisture Sensor and Transmitter: One.
 - 4. Room Pressure Sensor and Transmitter: One.
 - 5. Room Temperature Sensor and Transmitter: Four.
 - 6. General-Purpose Relay: One.
 - 7. DC Power Supply: One.

1.7. QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. DDC System Manufacturer Qualifications:

1. Nationally recognized manufacturer of DDC systems and products.
2. DDC systems with similar requirements to those indicated for a continuous period of 10 years within time of bid.
3. DDC systems and products that have been successfully tested and in use on at least five past projects.
4. Having complete published catalog literature, installation, operation and maintenance manuals for all products intended for use.
5. Having full-time in-house employees for the following:
 - a. Product research and development.
 - b. Product and application engineering.
 - c. Product manufacturing, testing and quality control.
 - d. Technical support for DDC system installation training, commissioning and troubleshooting of installations.
 - e. Owner operator training.

B. DDC System Provider Qualifications:

1. Authorized representative of, and trained by, DDC system manufacturer.
2. In-place facility located within 100 miles of Project.
3. Demonstrated past experience with installation of DDC system products being installed for period within five consecutive years before time of bid.
4. Each person assigned to Project shall have demonstrated past experience.
5. Staffing resources of competent and experienced full-time employees that are assigned to execute work according to schedule.
6. Service and maintenance staff assigned to support Project during warranty period.
7. Product parts inventory to support on-going DDC system operation for a period of not less than 5 years after Substantial Completion.
8. DDC system manufacturer's backing to take over execution of Work if necessary to comply with requirements indicated. Include Project-specific written letter, signed by manufacturer's corporate officer, if requested.

C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member Company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

D. Pipe and Pressure-Vessel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

1.8. WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures shall be adjusted, repaired, or replaced at no additional cost or reduction in service to Owner.
2. Include updates or upgrades to software and firmware if necessary to resolve deficiencies.
 - a. Install updates only after receiving Owner's written authorization.

3. Warranty service shall occur during normal business hours and commence within 24 hours of Owner's warranty service request.
4. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. MANUFACTURERS

- A. Automated Logic. ECSI John Evans Peoria, IL

2.2. DDC SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Microprocessor-based monitoring and control including analog/digital conversion and program logic. A control loop or subsystem in which digital and analog information is received and processed by a microprocessor, and digital control signals are generated based on control algorithms and transmitted to field devices to achieve a set of predefined conditions.
 1. DDC system shall consist of a high-speed, peer-to-peer network of distributed DDC controllers, other network devices, operator interfaces, and software.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3. WEB ACCESS

- A. DDC system shall be Web based.
 1. Web-Based Access to DDC System:
 - a. DDC system software shall be based on server thin-client architecture, designed around open standards of Web technology. DDC system server shall be accessed using a Web browser over DDC system network, using Owner's LAN, and remotely over Internet through Owner's LAN.
 - b. Intent of thin-client architecture is to provide operators complete access to DDC system via a Web browser. No special software other than a Web browser shall be required to access graphics, point displays, and trends; to configure trends, points, and controllers; and to edit programming.
 - c. Web access shall be password protected.
 2. Web-Compatible Access to DDC System:
 - a. Operator workstation shall perform overall system supervision and configuration, graphical user interface, management report generation, and alarm annunciation.
 - b. DDC system shall support Web browser access to building data. Operator using a standard Web browser shall be able to access control graphics and change adjustable set points.
 - c. Web access shall be password protected.

2.4. PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design DDC system to satisfy requirements indicated.

- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional to design DDC system to satisfy requirements indicated.
1. System Performance Objectives:
 - a. DDC system shall manage HVAC systems.
 - b. DDC system control shall operate HVAC systems to achieve optimum operating costs while using least possible energy and maintaining specified performance.
 - c. DDC system shall respond to power failures, HVAC equipment failures, and adverse and emergency conditions encountered through connected I/O points.
 - d. DDC system shall operate while unattended by an operator and through operator interaction.
 - e. DDC system shall record trends and transaction of events and produce report information such as performance, energy, occupancies, and equipment operation.
- C. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Products installed in ducts, equipment, and return-air paths shall comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- D. DDC System Speed:
1. Response Time of Connected I/O:
 - a. AI point values connected to DDC system shall be updated at least every two seconds for use by DDC controllers. Points used globally shall also comply with this requirement.
 - b. BI point values connected to DDC system shall be updated at least every two seconds for use by DDC controllers. Points used globally shall also comply with this requirement.
 - c. AO points connected to DDC system shall begin to respond to controller output commands within two second(s). Global commands shall also comply with this requirement.
 - d. BO point values connected to DDC system shall respond to controller output commands within two second(s). Global commands shall also comply with this requirement.
 2. Display of Connected I/O:
 - a. Analog point COV connected to DDC system shall be updated and displayed at least every five seconds for use by operator.
 - b. Binary point COV connected to DDC system shall be updated and displayed at least every five seconds for use by operator.
 - c. Alarms of analog and digital points connected to DDC system shall be displayed within 15 seconds of activation or change of state.
 - d. Graphic display refresh shall update within eight seconds.
 - e. Point change of values and alarms displayed from workstation to workstation when multiple operators are viewing from multiple workstations shall not exceed graphic refresh rate indicated.

- E. Network Bandwidth: Design each network of DDC system to include at least 30 percent available spare bandwidth with DDC system operating under normal and heavy load conditions indicated. Calculate bandwidth usage, and apply a safety factor to ensure that requirement is satisfied when subjected to testing under worst case conditions.
- F. DDC System Data Storage:
1. Include server(s) with disk drive data storage to archive not less than 24 consecutive months of historical data for all I/O points connected to system, including alarms, event histories, transaction logs, trends and other information indicated.
 2. When logged onto a server, operator shall be able to also interact with any DDC controller connected to DDC system as required for functional operation of DDC system.
 3. Server(s) shall be used for application configuration; for archiving, reporting and trending of data; for operator transaction archiving and reporting; for network information management; for alarm annunciation; and for operator interface tasks and controls application management.
 4. Server(s) shall use IT industry-standard database platforms such as Microsoft SQL Server and Microsoft Data Engine (MSDE).
- G. Future Expandability:
1. DDC system size shall be expandable to an ultimate capacity of at least three times total I/O points indicated.
 2. Additional DDC controllers, I/O and associated wiring shall be all that is needed to achieve ultimate capacity. Initial network infrastructure shall be designed and installed to support ultimate capacity.
 3. Operator interfaces installed initially shall not require hardware and software additions and revisions for ultimate capacity.
- H. Input Point Displayed Accuracy: Input point displayed values shall meet following end-to-end overall system accuracy, including errors associated with meter, sensor, transmitter, lead wire or cable, and analog to digital conversion.
1. Energy:
 - a. Thermal: Within 3 percent of reading.
 - b. Electric Power: Within 1 percent of reading.
 - c. Requirements indicated on Drawings for meters not supplied by utility.
 2. Flow:
 - a. Air: Within 5 percent of design flow rate.
 - b. Water: Within 2 percent of design flow rate.
 3. Gas:
 - a. Carbon Dioxide: Within 50 ppm.
 - b. Carbon Monoxide: Within 5 percent of reading.
 4. Moisture (Relative Humidity):
 - a. Air: Within 2 percent RH.
 - b. Outdoor: Within 2 percent RH.

5. Pressure:
 - a. Air, Ducts and Equipment: 1 percent of instrument range.
6. Temperature, Dew Point:
 - a. Air: Within 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
 - b. Outdoor: Within 2 deg F (1 deg C)
7. Temperature, Dry Bulb:
 - a. Air: Within 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
 - b. Space: Within 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
 - c. Outdoor: Within 1 deg F (0.5 deg C)
 - d. Heating Hot Water: Within 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
 - e. Temperature Difference: Within 0.25 deg F (0.15 deg C).
8. Temperature, Wet Bulb:
 - a. Air: Within 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
 - b. Space: Within 1 deg F (0.5 deg C).
 - c. Outdoor: Within 2 deg F (1 deg C).
- I. Precision of I/O Reported Values: Values reported in database and displayed shall have following precision:
 1. Current:
 - a. Milliampere: Nearest 1/100th of a milliampere.
 - b. Amperes: Nearest 1/10th of an ampere up to 100 A; nearest ampere for 100 Amp and more.
 2. Energy:
 - a. Electric Power:
 - 1) Rate (Watts): Nearest 1/10th of a watt through 1000 W.
 - 2) Rate (Kilowatts): Nearest 1/10th of a kilowatt through 1000 kW; nearest kilowatt above 1000 kW.
 - 3) Usage (Kilowatt-Hours): Nearest kilowatt through 10,000 kW; nearest 10 kW between 10,000 and 100,000 kW; nearest 100 kW for above 100,000 kW.
 3. Gas:
 - a. Carbon Monoxide (ppm): Nearest ppm.
 - b. Refrigerant (ppm): Nearest ppm.
 4. Moisture (Relative Humidity):
 - a. Relative Humidity (Percentage): Nearest 1 percent.
 5. Position, Dampers and Valves (Percentage Open): Nearest 1 percent.
 6. Pressure:

- a. Air, Ducts and Equipment: Nearest 1/10th in. w.c. (Nearest Pa up to 1000 Pa; nearest 10 Pa above 1000 Pa).
 - b. Space: Nearest 1/100th in. w.c. (Nearest 1/10th Pa).
7. Temperature:
- a. Air, Ducts and Equipment: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
 - b. Outdoor: Nearest degree.
 - c. Space: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
 - d. Heating Hot Water: Nearest degree.
- J. Environmental Conditions for Controllers, Gateways, and Routers:
- 1. Products shall operate without performance degradation under ambient environmental temperature, pressure and humidity conditions encountered for installed location.
 - a. If product alone cannot comply with requirement, install product in a protective enclosure that is isolated and protected from conditions impacting performance. Enclosure shall be internally insulated, electrically heated, cooled and ventilated as required by product and application.
 - 2. Products shall be protected with enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Products not available with integral enclosures complying with requirements indicated shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures. Installed location shall dictate the following NEMA 250 enclosure requirements:
 - a. Outdoors, Protected: Type 3R
 - b. Indoors, Heated with Filtered Ventilation: Type 1.
 - c. Indoors, Heated with Non-Filtered Ventilation: Type 2.
 - d. Indoors, Heated and Air Conditioned: Type 1.
 - e. Mechanical Equipment Rooms:
 - 1) Mechanical Rooms: Type 1.
- K. Environmental Conditions for Instruments and Actuators:
- 1. Instruments and actuators shall operate without performance degradation under the ambient environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions specified and encountered for installed location.
 - a. If instruments and actuators alone cannot comply with requirement, install instruments and actuators in protective enclosures that are isolated and protected from conditions impacting performance. Enclosure shall be internally insulated, electrically heated, cooled and ventilated as required by instrument and application.
- L. DDC System Reliability:
- 1. Design, install and configure DDC controllers to yield a MTBF of at least 40,000 hours, based on a confidence level of at least 90 percent. MTBF value shall include any failure for any reason to any part of products indicated.

2. If required to comply with MTBF indicated, include DDC system and product redundancy to maintain DCC system, and associated systems and equipment that are being controlled, operational and under automatic control.
3. Critical systems and equipment that require a higher degree of DDC system redundancy than MTBF indicated shall be indicated on Drawings.

M. Electric Power Quality:

1. Power-Line Surges:

- a. Protect susceptible DDC system products connected to ac power circuits from power-line surges to comply with requirements of IEEE C62.41.
- b. Do not use fuses for surge protection.
- c. Test protection in the normal mode and in the common mode, using the following two waveforms:
 - 1) 10-by-1000-mic.sec. Waveform with a peak voltage of 1500 V and a peak current of 60 A.
 - 2) 8-by-20-mic.sec. Waveform with a peak voltage of 1000 V and a peak current of 500 A.

2. Power Conditioning:

- a. Protect susceptible DDC system products connected to ac power circuits from irregularities and noise rejection. Characteristics of power-line conditioner shall be as follows:
 - 1) At 85 percent load, output voltage shall not deviate by more than plus or minus 1 percent of nominal when input voltage fluctuates between minus 20 percent to plus 10 percent of nominal.
 - 2) During load changes from zero to full load, output voltage shall not deviate by more than plus or minus 3 percent of nominal.
 - 3) Accomplish full correction of load switching disturbances within five cycles, and 95 percent correction within two cycles of onset of disturbance.
 - 4) Total harmonic distortion shall not exceed 3-1/2 percent at full load.

3. Ground Fault: Protect products from ground fault by providing suitable grounding. Products shall not fail due to ground fault condition.

2.5. PANEL-MOUNTED, MANUAL OVERRIDE SWITCHES

A. Manual Override of Control Dampers:

1. Include panel-mounted, two-position, selector switch for each automatic control damper being controlled by DDC controller.
2. Label each switch with damper designation served by switch.
3. Label switch positions to indicate either "Manual" or "Auto" control signal to damper.
4. With switch in "Auto" position signal to control damper actuator shall be control loop output signal from DDC controller.
5. With switch in "Manual" position, signal to damper actuator shall be controlled at panel with either an integral or separate switch to include local control.

- a. For Binary Control Dampers: Manual two-position switch shall have "Close" and "Open" switch positions indicated. With switch in "Close" position, damper shall close. With switch in "Open" position, damper shall open.
 - b. For Analog Control Dampers: A gradual switch shall have "Close" and "Open" switch limits indicated. Operator shall be able to rotate switch knob to adjust damper to any position from close to open.
- 6. DDC controller shall monitor and report position of each manual override selector switch. With switch placed in "manual" position, DDC controller shall signal an override condition to alert operator that damper is under manual, not automatic, control.
 - 7. Configure manual override switches to allow operator to manually operate damper while at panel without DDC controller installed and operational.
 - 8. Terminal equipment including heat pump units do not require manual override unless otherwise indicated by sequence of operation.

B. Manual Override of Control Valves:

- 1. Include panel-mounted, two-position, selector switch for each automatic control valve being controlled by a DDC controller.
- 2. Label each switch with valve designation served by switch.
- 3. Label switch positions to indicate either "Manual" or "Auto" control signal to valve.
- 4. With switch in "Auto" position, signal to control-valve actuator shall be a control loop output signal from DDC controller.
- 5. With switch in "Manual" position, signal to valve actuator shall be controlled at panel with either an integral or a separate switch to include local control.
 - a. For Binary Control Dampers: Manual two-position switch shall have "Close" and "Open" switch positions indicated. With switch in "Close" position, damper shall close. With switch in "Open" position, damper shall open.
 - b. For Analog Control Dampers: A gradual switch shall have "Open" and "Close" switch limits indicated. Operator shall be able to rotate switch knob to adjust damper to any position from close to open.
- 6. DDC controller shall monitor and report position of each manual override selector switch. With switch placed in "manual" position, DDC controller shall signal an override condition to alert operator that valve is under manual, not automatic, control.
- 7. Configure manual override switches to allow operator to manually operate valve while at panel without DDC controller installed and operational.
- 8. Terminal equipment including heat pump units do not require manual override unless otherwise indicated by sequence of operation.

2.6. SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE

A. System architecture shall consist of no more than two levels of LANs.

- 1. Level one LAN shall connect network controllers and operator workstations.
- 2. Level one or Level two LAN shall connect programmable application controllers to other programmable application controllers, and to network controllers.
- 3. Level two LAN shall connect application-specific controllers to programmable application controllers and network controllers.
- 4. Level two LAN shall connect application-specific controllers to application-specific controllers.

B. Minimum Data Transfer and Communication Speed:

1. LAN Connecting Operator Workstations and Network Controllers: 100 Mbps.
 2. LAN Connecting Programmable Application Controllers: 1000 kbps.
 3. LAN Connecting Application-Specific Controllers: 115,000 bps.
- C. DDC system shall consist of dedicated and separated LANs that are not shared with other building systems and tenant data and communication networks.
- D. System architecture shall be modular and have inherent ability to expand to not less than two times system size indicated with no impact to performance indicated.
- E. System architecture shall perform modifications without having to remove and replace existing network equipment.
- F. Number of LANs and associated communication shall be transparent to operator. All I/O points residing on any LAN shall be capable of global sharing between all system LANs.
- G. System design shall eliminate dependence on any single device for system alarm reporting and control execution. Each controller shall operate independently by performing its' own control, alarm management and historical data collection.

2.7. DDC SYSTEM OPERATOR INTERFACES

- A. Operator Means of System Access: Operator shall be able to access entire DDC system through any of multiple means, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Desktop and portable operator workstation with hardwired connection through LAN port.
 2. Portable operator terminal with hardwired connection through LAN port.
 3. Portable operator workstation with wireless connection through LAN router.
 4. PDA with wireless connection through LAN router.
 5. Remote connection using outside of system personal computer or PDA through Web access.
 6. Remote connection using portable operator workstation and telephone dial-up modem.
- B. Access to system, regardless of operator means used, shall be transparent to operator.
- C. Network Ports: For hardwired connection of desktop or portable operator workstation. Network port shall be easily accessible, properly protected, clearly labeled, and installed at the following locations:
1. Each mechanical equipment room.
- D. Desktop Workstations:
1. Connect to DDC system Level one LAN through a communications port directly on LAN or through a communications port on a DDC controller.
 2. Able to communicate with any device located on any DDC system LAN.
 3. Able to communicate, with modems, remotely with any device connected to any DDC system LAN.
 4. Communication via a modem shall not interfere with LAN activity and LAN activity shall not prevent workstation from handling incoming calls.
- E. Portable Workstations:

1. Connect to DDC system Level one LAN through a communications port directly on LAN or through a communications port on a DDC controller.
2. Able to communicate with any device located on any DDC system LAN.
3. Connect to DDC system Level two LAN through a communications port on an application-specific controller, or a room temperature sensor connected to an application-specific controller.
4. Connect to system through a wireless router connected to Level one LAN.
5. Portable workstation shall be able to communicate with any device connected to any system LAN regardless of point of physical connection to system.
6. Monitor, program, schedule, adjust set points, and report capabilities of I/O connected anywhere in system.
7. Have dynamic graphic displays that are identical to desktop workstations.

F. POT:

1. Connect DDC controller through a communications port local to controller.
2. Able to communicate with any DDC system controller that is directly connected to DDC system.

G. Personal Digital Assistant:

1. Connect to system through a wireless router connected to LAN.
2. Able to communicate with any DDC controller connected to DDC system.

H. Telephone Communications:

1. Through use of a standard modem, operator shall be able to communicate with any device connected to any system LAN.
2. Have auto-dial and auto-answer communications to allow desktop and portable workstations and DDC controllers to communicate with remote workstations and remote DDC controllers via telephone lines.

a. Desktop and Portable Operator Workstation Computers with Modems:

- 1) Operators shall be able to perform all control functions, report functions, and database generation and modification functions as if directly connected to system LAN.
- 2) Have routines to automatically answer calls, and either file or display information sent remotely.
- 3) Communications taking place over telephone lines shall be completely transparent to operator.
- 4) Dial-up program shall maintain a user-definable cross-reference and associated telephone numbers so it is not required to remember or manually dial telephone numbers.

b. DDC Controllers:

- 1) Not have modems unless specifically indicated for a unique controller.
- 2) Controllers with modems shall automatically place calls to report critical alarms, or to upload trend and historical information for archiving.
- 3) Analyze and prioritize alarms to minimize initiation of calls.
- 4) Buffer noncritical alarms in memory and report them as a group of alarms, or until an operator manually requests an upload.
- 5) Make provisions for handling busy signals, no-answers, and incomplete data transfers.

- 6) Call default devices when communications cannot be established with primary devices.
- I. Critical Alarm Reporting:
 1. Operator-selected critical alarms shall be sent by DDC system to notify operator of critical alarms that require immediate attention.
 2. DDC system shall send alarm notification to multiple recipients that are assigned for each alarm.
 3. DDC system shall notify recipients by any or all means, including e-mail, text message and prerecorded phone message to mobile and landline phone numbers.
- J. Simultaneous Operator Use: Capable of accommodating up to five simultaneous operators that are accessing DDC system through any one of operator interfaces indicated.

2.8. NETWORKS

- A. Acceptable networks for connecting operator workstations and network controllers include the following:
 1. ATA 878.1, ARCNET.
 2. CEA-709.1-C.
 3. IP.
 4. IEEE 8802-3, Ethernet.
- B. Acceptable networks for connecting programmable application controllers include the following:
 1. ATA 878.1, ARCNET.
 2. CEA-709.1-C.
 3. IP.
 4. IEEE 8802-3, Ethernet.
- C. Acceptable networks for connecting application-specific controllers include the following:
 1. ATA 878.1, ARCNET.
 2. CEA-709.1-C.
 3. EIA-485A.
 4. IP.
 5. IEEE 8802-3, Ethernet.

2.9. NETWORK COMMUNICATION PROTOCOL

- A. Network communication protocol(s) used throughout entire DDC system shall be open to public and available to other companies for use in making future modifications to DDC system.
- B. ASHRAE 135 Protocol:
 1. ASHRAE 135 communication protocol shall be sole and native protocol used throughout entire DDC system.
 2. DDC system shall not require use of gateways except to integrate HVAC equipment and other building systems and equipment, not required to use ASHRAE 135 communication protocol.

3. If used, gateways shall connect to DDC system using ASHRAE 135 communication protocol and Project object properties and read/write services indicated by interoperability schedule.
4. Operator workstations, controllers and other network devices shall be tested and listed by BACnet Testing Laboratories.

C. CEA-709.1-C Protocol:

1. DDC system shall be an open implementation of LonWorks technology using CEA 709.1-C communication protocol and using LonMark SNVTs as defined in LonMark SNVT list exclusively for communication throughout DDC system.
2. LNS shall be used for all network management including addressing and binding of network variables.
 - a. Final LNS database shall be submitted with Project closeout submittals.
 - b. All devices shall be online and commissioned into LNS database.
3. All devices connected to DDC system network(s) shall use CEA-709.1-C protocol and be installed so SCPT output from any node on network can be bound to any other node in the domain.

D. Industry Standard Protocols:

1. DDC system shall use any one or a combination of the following industry standard protocols for network communication while complying with other DDC system requirements indicated:
 - a. ASHRAE 135.
 - b. CEA-709.1-C.
 - c. Modbus Application Protocol Specification V1.1b.
 - d. <Insert standard protocol>.
2. Operator workstations and network controllers shall communicate through ASHRAE 135 or CEA-709.1-C protocol.
3. Portions of DDC system networks using ASHRAE 135 communication protocol shall be an open implementation of network devices complying with ASHRAE 135. Network devices shall be tested and listed by BACnet Testing Laboratories.
4. Portions of DDC system networks using CEA-709.1-C communication protocol shall be an open implementation of LonWorks technology using CEA-709.1-C communication protocol and using LonMark SNVTs as defined in LonMark SNVT list exclusively for DDC system.
5. Portions of DDC system networks using Modbus Application Protocol Specification V1.1b communication protocol shall be an open implementation of network devices and technology complying with Modbus Application Protocol Specification V1.1b.
6. Gateways shall be used to connect networks and network devices using different protocols.

2.10. DESKTOP OPERATOR WORKSTATIONS

A. Performance Requirements:

1. Performance requirements may dictate equipment exceeding minimum requirements indicated.

2. Energy Star compliant.
- B. Personal Computer: Owner provided.
1. Minimum Processor Speed: >.
 2. RAM:
 - a. Capacity: 48 GB.
 - b. Speed and Type: 1333 MHz,
 - c. Expandable Capacity: 72 GB.
 3. Hard Drive:
 - a. Number of Hard Drives: Two.
 - b. Capacity:
 4. At least four expansion slots of [32] [64] <Insert number> bit.
 5. Video Card:
 - a. Resolution: 1920 by 1200 pixels.
 - b. RAM: ___GB.
 - c. Controller Speed: __GHz.
 - d. On-Board Memory Speed: __GHz.
 - e. On-Board Memory Data Width: ___ bit.
 6. Sound Card:
 - a. At least 128 voice wavetable synthesis.
 - b. Capable of delivering three-dimensional sound effects.
 - c. High-resolution 16-bit stereo digital audio recording and playback with user-selectable sample rates up to 48,000 Hz.
 7. Network Interface Card: Include card with connection, as applicable.
 - a. 10-100-1000 base TX Ethernet with RJ45 connector port.
 - b. 100 base FX Ethernet with SC or ST port.
 8. Cable Modem:
 - a. Certified to comply with DOCSIS Cable Modem to Customer Premise Equipment Interface Specification, Version 3.0 and backward compatible with earlier versions.
 - b. Ethernet or USB connectivity.
 9. Optical Modem: Full duplex link for connection to fiber-optic cable provided.
 10. I/O Ports:
 - a. Two second-generation USB 2.0 ports on front panel, six on back panel, and three internal on motherboard.
 - b. One serial port.
 - c. One parallel port.
 - d. Two PS/2 ports.
 - e. One RJ-45.
 - f. One stereo line-in and headphone line-out on back panel.
 - g. One microphone and headphone connector on front panel.
 - h. One IEEE 1394 on front and back panel with PCI-e card.

- i. One ESATA port on back panel.
 - 11. Battery: Life of at least three years to maintain system clock/calendar and ROM, as a minimum.
 - C. Keyboard:
 - 1. 101 enhanced keyboard.
 - 2. Full upper- and lowercase ASCII keyset, numeric keypad, dedicated cursor control keypad, and 12 programmable function keys.
 - 3. Wireless operation within up to 72 inches (1800 mm) in front of workstation.
 - D. Pointing Device:
 - 1. Either a two- or three-button mouse.
 - 2. Wireless operation within up to 72 inches (1800 mm) in front of workstation.
 - E. Flat Panel Display Monitor:
 - 1. Display:
 - a. Color display with 20" diagonal viewable area.
 - b. Digital input signal.
 - c. Aspect Ratio: 16 to 9.
 - d. Antiglare display.
 - e. Brightness: 250 cd/sq. m.
 - f. Tilt adjustable base.
 - g. Energy Star compliant.
 - h. Resolution: 1920 by 1080 pixels at 60 Hz with pixel size of 0.277 mm or smaller.
 - i. Number of Displays: One.
 - F. Speakers:
 - 1. Two, with individual controls for volume, bass and treble.
 - 2. Signal to Noise Ratio: At least 65 dB.
 - 3. Power: At least 4 W per speaker/channel.
 - 4. Magnetic shielding to prevent distortion on the video monitor.
 - G. I/O Cabling: Include applicable cabling to connect I/O devices.
- 2.11. PORTABLE OPERATOR WORKSTATIONS (Two required by TCC)
- A. Performance Requirements:
 - 1. Performance requirements may dictate equipment exceeding minimum requirements indicated.
 - 2. Energy Star compliant.
 - 3. Hardware and software shall support local down-loading to DDC controllers.
 - 4. Data transfer rate to DDC controller shall be at network speed.
 - B. Processor:
 - 1. Minimum Processor Speed: require by system.

2. RAM:
 - a. Capacity: required by system GB.
 - b. Speed and Type: __ MHz,.
 - c. Expandable Capacity: __GB.
 3. Hard Drive:
 - a. Number of Hard Drives: One.
 - b. Capacity:
 4. Video Card: __ of RAM.
- C. Input and Output Ports:
1. Serial port.
 2. Shared port for external keyboard or mouse.
 3. Four USB 2.0 ports.
 4. Ethernet port.
 5. IEEE 1394 integrated port.
 6. Serial infrared communications port.
- D. Battery:
1. 9-cell, 81 with lithium ion battery and ac adapter.
 2. Battery life of at least three years.
 3. Battery charge time of less than three hours.
 4. Spare Battery (ies).Two.
- E. Keyboard:
1. 85-key backlighted keyboard.
 2. Full upper- and lowercase ASCII keyset.
- F. Integral Pointing Device: Touchpad with two buttons or equivalent pointing device.
- G. Display:
1. 17" inches (mm) diagonal or larger high-definition WLED color display.
 2. Antiglare screen.
 3. 1920 by 1080 pixel resolution.
 4. Brightness: 300 nits.
- H. Network Interface Card: Include card with connection, as application.
1. 10-100-1000 base TX Ethernet with RJ45 connector port.
 2. 100 base FX Ethernet with SC or ST port.
- I. Digital Video Disc Rewrite Recorder (DVD+/-RW):
1. Compatible with DVD disks and data, audio, recordable and rewritable compact disks.
 2. Nominal Data Transfer Rates:
 3. 160-ms access time.

J. Accessories:

1. Leather carrying case.
2. Docking station.
3. Wireless-N communication card.
4. Bluetooth module with 2.1 standard technologies.
5. Mobile broadband card.
6. Wireless optical mouse.
7. Light-sensitive Web cam and noise-cancelling digital array microphone.
8. Cable with network jackets on each end. Minimum cable length shall be 36".

2.12. SYSTEM SOFTWARE

A. System Software Minimum Requirements:

1. Real-time multitasking and multiuser 32 or 64 bit operating system that allows concurrent multiple operator workstations operating and concurrent execution of multiple real-time programs and custom program development.
2. Operating system shall be capable of operating DOS and Microsoft Windows applications.
3. Database management software shall manage all data on an integrated and non-redundant basis. Additions and deletions to database shall be without detriment to existing data. Include cross linkages so no data required by a program can be deleted by an operator until that data have been deleted from respective programs.
4. Network communications software shall manage and control multiple network communications to provide exchange of global information and execution of global programs.
5. Operator interface software shall include day-to-day operator transaction processing, alarm and report handling, operator privilege level and data segregation control, custom programming, and online data modification capability.
6. Scheduling software shall schedule centrally based time and event, temporary, and exception day programs.

B. Operator Interface Software:

1. Minimize operator training through use of English language prorating and English language point identification.
2. Minimize use of a typewriter-style keyboard through use of a pointing device similar to a mouse.
3. Operator sign-off shall be a manual operation or, if no keyboard or mouse activity takes place, an automatic sign-off.
4. Automatic sign-off period shall be programmable from one to 60 minutes in one-minute increments on a per operator basis.
5. Operator sign-on and sign-off activity shall be recorded and sent to printer.
6. Security Access:
 - a. Operator access to DDC system shall be under password control.
 - b. An alphanumeric password shall be field assignable to each operator.
 - c. Operators shall be able to access DDC system by entry of proper password.
 - d. Operator password shall be same regardless of which computer or other interface means is used.
 - e. Additions or changes made to passwords shall be updated automatically.
 - f. Each operator shall be assigned an access level to restrict access to data and functions the operator is cable of performing.
 - g. Software shall have at least five access levels.

- h. Each menu item shall be assigned an access level so that a one-for-one correspondence between operator assigned access level(s) and menu item access level(s) is required to gain access to menu item.
 - i. Display menu items to operator with those capable of access highlighted. Menu and operator access level assignments shall be online programmable and under password control.
7. Data Segregation:
- a. Include data segregation for control of specific data routed to a workstation, to an operator or to a specific output device, such as a printer.
 - b. Include at least 32 segregation groups.
 - c. Segregation groups shall be selectable such as "fire points," "fire points on second floor," "space temperature points," "HVAC points," and so on.
 - d. Points shall be assignable to multiple segregation groups. Display and output of data to printer or monitor shall occur where there is a match of operator or peripheral segregation group assignment and point segregations.
 - e. Alarms shall be displayed and printed at each peripheral to which segregation allows, but only those operators assigned to peripheral and having proper authorization level will be allowed to acknowledge alarms.
 - f. Operators and peripherals shall be assignable to multiple segregation groups and all assignments are to be online programmable and under password control.
8. Operators shall be able to perform commands including, but not limited to, the following:
- a. Start or stop selected equipment.
 - b. Adjust set points.
 - c. Add, modify, and delete time programming.
 - d. Enable and disable process execution.
 - e. Lock and unlock alarm reporting for each point.
 - f. Enable and disable totalization for each point.
 - g. Enable and disable trending for each point.
 - h. Override control loop set points.
 - i. Enter temporary override schedules.
 - j. Define holiday schedules.
 - k. Change time and date.
 - l. Enter and modify analog alarm limits.
 - m. Enter and modify analog warning limits.
 - n. View limits.
 - o. Enable and disable demand limiting.
 - p. Enable and disable duty cycle.
 - q. Display logic programming for each control sequence.
9. Reporting:
- a. Generated automatically and manually.
 - b. Sent to displays, printers and disk files.
 - c. Types of Reporting:
 - 1) General listing of points.
 - 2) List points currently in alarm.
 - 3) List of off-line points.
 - 4) List points currently in override status.
 - 5) List of disabled points.

- 6) List points currently locked out.
 - 7) List of items defined in a "Follow-Up" file.
 - 8) List weekly schedules.
 - 9) List holiday programming.
 - 10) List of limits and deadbands.
10. Summaries: For specific points, for a logical point group, for an operator selected group(s), or for entire system without restriction due to hardware configuration.

C. Graphic Interface Software:

- 1. Include a full interactive graphical selection means of accessing and displaying system data to operator. Include at least five levels with the penetration path operator assignable (for example, site, building, floor, air-handling unit, and supply temperature loop). Native language descriptors assigned to menu items are to be operator defined and modifiable under password control.
- 2. Include a hierarchical-linked dynamic graphic operator interface for accessing and displaying system data and commanding and modifying equipment operation. Interface shall use a pointing device with pull-down or penetrating menus, color and animation to facilitate operator understanding of system.
- 3. Include at least 10 levels of graphic penetration with the hierarchy operator assignable.
- 4. Descriptors for graphics, points, alarms and such shall be modified through operator's workstation under password control.
- 5. Graphic displays shall be online user definable and modifiable using the hardware and software provided.
- 6. Data to be displayed within a graphic shall be assignable regardless of physical hardware address, communication or point type.
- 7. Graphics are to be online programmable and under password control.
- 8. Points may be assignable to multiple graphics where necessary to facilitate operator understanding of system operation.
- 9. Graphics shall also contain software points.
- 10. Penetration within a graphic hierarchy shall display each graphic name as graphics are selected to facilitate operator understanding.
- 11. Back-trace feature shall permit operator to move upward in the hierarchy using a pointing device. Back trace shall show all previous penetration levels. Include operator with option of showing each graphic full screen size with back trace as horizontal header or by showing a "stack" of graphics, each with a back trace.
- 12. Display operator accessed data on the monitor.
- 13. Operator shall select further penetration using pointing device to click on a site, building, floor, area, equipment, and so on. Defined and linked graphic below that selection shall then be displayed.
- 14. Include operator with means to directly access graphics without going through penetration path.
- 15. Dynamic data shall be assignable to graphics.
- 16. Display points (physical and software) with dynamic data provided by DDC system with appropriate text descriptors, status or value, and engineering unit.
- 17. Use color, rotation, or other highly visible means, to denote status and alarm states. Color shall be variable for each class of points, as chosen by operator.
- 18. Points shall be dynamic with operator adjustable update rates on a per point basis from one second to over a minute.
- 19. For operators with appropriate privilege, points shall be commanded directly from display using pointing device.

- a. For an analog command point such as set point, current conditions and limits shall be displayed and operator can position new set point using pointing device.
 - b. For a digital command point such as valve position, valve shall show its current state such as open or closed and operator could select alternative position using pointing device.
 - c. Keyboard equivalent shall be available for those operators with that preference.
- 20. Operator shall be able to split or resize viewing screen into quadrants to show one graphic on one quadrant of screen and other graphics or spreadsheet, bar chart, word processing, curve plot and other information on other quadrants on screen. This feature shall allow real-time monitoring of one part of system while displaying other parts of system or data to better facilitate overall system operation.
- 21. Help Features:
 - a. On-line context-sensitive help utility to facilitate operator training and understanding.
 - b. Bridge to further explanation of selected keywords. Document shall contain text and graphics to clarify system operation.
 - 1) If help feature does not have ability to bridge on keywords for more information, a complete set of user manuals shall be provided in an indexed word-processing program, which shall run concurrently with operating system software.
 - c. Available for Every Menu Item:
 - 1) Index items for each system menu item.
- 22. Graphic generation software shall allow operator to add, modify, or delete system graphic displays.
 - a. Include libraries of symbols depicting HVAC symbols such as fans, coils, filters, dampers, valves pumps, and electrical symbols.
 - b. Graphic development package shall use a pointing device in conjunction with a drawing program to allow operator to perform the following:
 - 1) Define background screens.
 - 2) Define connecting lines and curves.
 - 3) Locate, orient and size descriptive text.
 - 4) Define and display colors for all elements.
 - 5) Establish correlation between symbols or text and associated system points or other displays.
- D. Project-Specific Graphics: Graphics documentation including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Site plan showing each building, and additional site elements, which are being controlled or monitored by DDC system.
 - 2. Plan for each building floor, including interstitial floors, and each roof level of each building, showing the following:
 - a. Room layouts with room identification and name.
 - b. Locations and identification of all monitored and controlled HVAC equipment and other equipment being monitored and controlled by DDC system.

- c. Location and identification of each hardware point being controlled or monitored by DDC system.
 - 3. Control schematic for each of following, including a graphic system schematic representation, similar to that indicated on Drawings, with point identification, set point and dynamic value indication, sequence of operation and control logic diagram.
 - 4. Graphic display for each piece of equipment connected to DDC system through a data communications link. Include dynamic indication of all points associated with equipment.
 - 5. DDC system network riser diagram that shows schematic layout for entire system including all networks and all controllers.
- E. Customizing Software:
- 1. Software to modify and tailor DDC system to specific and unique requirements of equipment installed, to programs implemented and to staffing and operational practices planned.
 - 2. Online modification of DDC system configuration, program parameters, and database using menu selection and keyboard entry of data into preformatted display templates.
 - 3. As a minimum, include the following modification capability:
 - a. Operator assignment shall include designation of operator passwords, access levels, point segregation and auto sign-off.
 - b. Peripheral assignment capability shall include assignment of segregation groups and operators to consoles and printers, designation of backup workstations and printers, designation of workstation header points and enabling and disabling of print-out of operator changes.
 - c. System configuration and diagnostic capability shall include communications and peripheral port assignments, DDC controller assignments to network, DDC controller enable and disable, assignment of command trace to points and application programs and initiation of diagnostics.
 - d. System text addition and change capability shall include English or native language descriptors for points, segregation groups and access levels and action messages for alarms, run time and trouble condition.
 - e. Time and schedule change capability shall include time and date set, time and occupancy schedules, exception and holiday schedules and daylight savings time schedules.
 - f. Point related change capability shall include the following:
 - 1) System and point enable and disable.
 - 2) Run-time enable and disable.
 - 3) Assignment of points to segregation groups, calibration tables, lockout, and run time and to a fixed I/O value.
 - 4) Assignment of alarm and warning limits.
 - g. Application program change capability shall include the following:
 - 1) Enable and disable of software programs.
 - 2) Programming changes.
 - 3) Assignment of comfort limits, global points, time and event initiators, time and event schedules and enable and disable time and event programs.
 - 4. Software shall allow operator to add points, or groups of points, to DDC system and to link them to energy optimization and management programs. Additions and modifications shall be online programmable using operator workstation, downloaded to other network devices and entered into their databases. After verification of point

additions and associated program operation, database shall be uploaded and recorded on hard drive and disk for archived record.

5. Include high-level language programming software capability for implementation of custom DDC programs. Software shall include a compiler, linker, and up- and down-load capability.
6. Include a library of DDC algorithms, intrinsic control operators, arithmetic, logic and relational operators for implementation of control sequences. Also include, as a minimum, the following:
 - a. Proportional control (P).
 - b. Proportional plus integral (PI).
 - c. Proportional plus integral plus derivative (PID).
 - d. Adaptive and intelligent self-learning control.
 - 1) Algorithm shall monitor loop response to output corrections and adjust loop response characteristics according to time constant changes imposed.
 - 2) Algorithm shall operate in a continuous self-learning manner and shall retain in memory a stored record of system dynamics so that on system shut down and restart, learning process starts from where it left off.
7. Fully implemented intrinsic control operators including sequence, reversing, ratio, time delay, and time of day, highest select AO, lowest select AO, analog controlled digital output, analog control AO, and digitally controlled AO.
8. Logic operators such as "And," "Or," "Not," and others that are part of a standard set available with a high-level language.
9. Arithmetic operators such as "Add," "Subtract," "Multiply," "Divide," and others that are part of a standard set available with a high-level language.
10. Relational operators such as "Equal To," "Not Equal To," "Less Than," "Greater Than," and others that are part of a standard set available with a high-level language.

F. Alarm Handling Software:

1. Include alarm handling software to report all alarm conditions monitored and transmitted through DDC controllers.
2. Include first in, first out handling of alarms according to alarm priority ranking, with most critical alarms first, and with buffer storage in case of simultaneous and multiple alarms.
3. Alarm handling shall be active at all times to ensure that alarms are processed even if an operator is not currently signed on to DDC system.
4. Alarms display shall include the following:
 - a. Indication of alarm condition such as "Abnormal Off," "Hi Alarm," and "Low Alarm."
 - b. "Analog Value" or "Status" group and point identification with native language point descriptor such as "Space Temperature, Building 110, 2nd Floor, Room 212."
 - c. Discrete per point alarm action message, such as "Call Maintenance Dept. Ext-5561."
 - d. Include extended message capability to allow assignment and printing of extended action messages. Capability shall be operator programmable and assignable on a per point basis.
5. Alarms shall be directed to appropriate operator workstations, printers, and individual operators by privilege level and segregation assignments.
6. Send e-mail alarm messages to designated operators.

7. Send e-mail, page, text and voice messages to designated operators for critical alarms.
8. Alarms shall be categorized and processed by class.
 - a. Class 1:
 - 1) Associated with fire, security and other extremely critical equipment monitoring functions; have alarm, trouble, return to normal, and acknowledge conditions printed and displayed.
 - 2) Unacknowledged alarms to be placed in unacknowledged alarm buffer.
 - 3) All conditions shall cause an audible sound and shall require individual acknowledgment to silence audible sound.
 - b. Class 2:
 - 1) Critical, but not life-safety related, and processed same as Class 1 alarms, except do not require individual acknowledgment.
 - 2) Acknowledgement may be through a multiple alarm acknowledgment.
 - c. Class 3:
 - 1) General alarms; printed, displayed and placed in unacknowledged alarm buffer queues.
 - 2) Each new alarm received shall cause an audible sound. Audible sound shall be silenced by "acknowledging" alarm or by pressing a "silence" key.
 - 3) Acknowledgement of queued alarms shall be either on an individual basis or through a multiple alarm acknowledgement.
 - 4) Alarms returning to normal condition shall be printed and not cause an audible sound or require acknowledgment.
 - d. Class 4:
 - 1) Routine maintenance or other types of warning alarms.
 - 2) Alarms to be printed only, with no display, no audible sound and no acknowledgment required.
9. Include an unacknowledged alarm indicator on display to alert operator that there are unacknowledged alarms in system. Operator shall be able to acknowledge alarms on an individual basis or through a multiple alarm acknowledge key, depending on alarm class.
10. To ensure that no alarm records are lost, it shall be possible to assign a backup printer to accept alarms in case of failure of primary printer.

G. Reports and Logs:

1. Include reporting software package that allows operator to select, modify, or create reports using DDC system I/O point data available.
2. Each report shall be definable as to data content, format, interval and date.
3. Report data shall be sampled and stored on DDC controller, within storage limits of DDC controller, and then uploaded to archive on workstation for historical reporting.
4. Operator shall be able to obtain real-time logs of all I/O points by type or status, such as alarm, point lockout, or normal.
5. Reports and logs shall be stored on workstation hard drives in a format that is readily accessible by other standard software applications, including spreadsheets and word processing.

6. Reports and logs shall be readily printed and set to be printed either on operator command or at a specific time each day.
- H. Standard Reports: Standard DDC system reports shall be provided and operator shall be able to customize reports later.
1. All I/O: With current status and values.
 2. Alarm: All current alarms, except those in alarm lockout.
 3. Disabled I/O: All I/O points that are disabled.
 4. Alarm Lockout I/O: All I/O points in alarm lockout, whether manual or automatic.
 5. Alarm Lockout I/O in Alarm: All I/O in alarm lockout that are currently in alarm.
 6. Logs:
 - a. Alarm history.
 - b. System messages.
 - c. System events.
 - d. Trends.
- I. Custom Reports: Operator shall be able to easily define any system data into a daily, weekly, monthly, or annual report. Reports shall be time and date stamped and shall contain a report title.
- J. Tenant Override Reports: Prepare Project-specific reports.
1. Weekly report showing daily total time in hours that each tenant has requested after-hours HVAC.
 2. Monthly report showing daily total time in hours that each tenant has requested after-hours HVAC.
 3. Annual summary report that shows after-hours HVAC usage on a monthly basis.
- K. HVAC Equipment Reports: Prepare Project-specific reports.
1. Ground Source Report: Daily report showing operating conditions of each chiller according to ASHRAE 147, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Water entering temperature.
 - b. Water leaving temperature.
- L. Utility Reports: Prepare Project-specific reports.
1. Electric Report:
 - a. Include weekly report showing daily electrical consumption and peak electrical demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
 - b. Include monthly report showing the daily electrical consumption and peak electrical demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
 - c. Include annual report showing the monthly electrical consumption and peak electrical demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
 - d. For each weekly, monthly and annual report, include sum total of submeters combined by load type, such as lighting, receptacles and HVAC equipment showing daily electrical consumption and peak electrical demand.
 - e. For each weekly, monthly and annual report, include sum total of all submeters in building showing electrical consumption and peak electrical demand.
- M. Standard Trends:

1. Trend all I/O point present values, set points, and other parameters indicated for trending.
 2. Trends shall be associated into groups, and a trend report shall be set up for each group.
 3. Trends shall be stored within DDC controller and uploaded to hard drives automatically on reaching 75 of DDC controller buffer limit, or by operator request, or by archiving time schedule.
 4. Preset trend intervals for each I/O point after review with Owner.
 5. Trend intervals shall be operator selectable from 10 seconds up to 60 minutes. Minimum number of consecutive trend values stored at one time shall be 100 per variable.
 6. When drive storage memory is full, most recent data shall overwrite oldest data.
 7. Archived and real-time trend data shall be available for viewing numerically and graphically by operators.
- N. Custom Trends: Operator shall be able to define a custom trend log for any I/O point in DDC system.
1. Each trend shall include interval, start time, and stop time.
 2. Data shall be sampled and stored on DDC controller, within storage limits of DDC controller, and then uploaded to archive on workstation hard drives.
 3. Data shall be retrievable for use in spreadsheets and standard database programs.
- O. Programming Software:
1. Include programming software to execute sequences of operation indicated.
 2. Include programming routines in simple and easy to follow logic with detailed text comments describing what the logic does and how it corresponds to sequence of operation.
 3. Programing software shall be one of the following:
 - a. Graphic Based: Programming shall use a library of function blocks made from preprogrammed code designed for DDC control systems.
 - 1) Function blocks shall be assembled with interconnection lines that represent to control sequence in a flowchart.
 - 2) Programming tools shall be viewable in real time to show present values and logical results of each function block.
 - b. Menu Based: Programming shall be done by entering parameters, definitions, conditions, requirements and constraints.
 - c. Line by Line and Text Based: Programming shall declare variable types such as local, global, real, integer, and so on, at the beginning of the program. Use descriptive comments frequently to describe programming code.
 4. Include means for detecting programming errors and testing software control strategies with a simulation tool before implementing in actual control. Simulation tool may be inherent with programming software or as a separate product.
- P. Database Management Software:
1. Where a separate SQL database is used for information storage, DDC system shall include database management software that separates database monitoring and managing functions by supporting multiple separate windows.

2. Database secure access shall be accomplished using standard SQL authentication including ability to access data for use outside of DDC system applications.
3. Database management function shall include summarized information on trend, alarm, event, and audit for the following database management actions:
 - a. Backup.
 - b. Purge.
 - c. Restore.
4. Database management software shall support the following:
 - a. Statistics: Display database server information and trend, alarm, event, and audit information on database.
 - b. Maintenance: Include method of purging records from trend, alarm, event and audit databases by supporting separate screens for creating a backup before purging, selecting database, and allowing for retention of a selected number of day's data.
 - c. Backup: Include means to create a database backup file and select a storage location.
 - d. Restore: Include a restricted means of restoring a database by requiring operator to have proper security level.
5. Database management software shall include information of current database activity, including the following:
 - a. Ready.
 - b. Purging record from a database.
 - c. Action failed.
 - d. Refreshing statistics.
 - e. Restoring database.
 - f. Shrinking a database.
 - g. Backing up a database.
 - h. Resetting Internet information services.
 - i. Starting network device manager.
 - j. Shutting down the network device manager.
 - k. Action successful.
6. Database management software monitoring functions shall continuously read database information once operator has logged on.
7. Include operator notification through on-screen pop-up display and e-mail message when database value has exceeded a warning or alarm limit.
8. Monitoring settings window shall have the following sections:
 - a. Allow operator to set and review scan intervals and start times.
 - b. E-mail: Allow operator to create and review e-mail and phone text messages to be delivered when a warning or an alarm is generated.
 - c. Warning: Allow operator to define warning limit parameters, set reminder frequency and link e-mail message.
 - d. Alarm: Allow operator to define alarm limit parameters, set reminder frequency and link e-mail message.
 - e. Database Login: Protect system from unauthorized database manipulation by creating a read access and a write access for each of trend, alarm, event and audit databases as well as operator proper security access to restore a database.
9. Monitoring settings taskbar shall include the following informational icons:

- a. Normal: Indicates by color and size, or other easily identifiable means that all databases are within their limits.
- b. Warning: Indicates by color and size, or other easily identifiable means that one or more databases have exceeded their warning limit.
- c. Alarm: Indicates by color and size, or other easily identifiable means that one or more databases have exceeded their alarm limit.

2.13. OFFICE APPLICATION SOFTWARE

- A. Include current version of office application software at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Office application software package shall include multiple separate applications and use a common platform for all applications, similar to Microsoft's "Office Professional."
 1. Database.
 2. E-mail.
 3. Presentation.
 4. Publisher.
 5. Spreadsheet.
 6. Word processing.

2.14. DDC CONTROLLERS

- A. DDC system shall consist of a combination of network controllers, programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers to satisfy performance requirements indicated.
- B. DDC controllers shall perform monitoring, control, energy optimization and other requirements indicated.
- C. DDC controllers shall use a multitasking, multiuser, real-time digital control microprocessor with a distributed network database and intelligence.
- D. Each DDC controller shall be capable of full and complete operation as a completely independent unit and as a part of a DDC system wide distributed network.
- E. Environment Requirements:
 1. Controller hardware shall be suitable for the anticipated ambient conditions.
 2. Controllers located in conditioned space shall be rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F.
 3. Controllers located outdoors shall be rated for operation at 40 to 150 deg F.
- F. Power and Noise Immunity:
 1. Controller shall operate at 90 to 110 percent of nominal voltage rating and shall perform an orderly shutdown below 80 percent of nominal voltage.
 2. Operation shall be protected against electrical noise of 5 to 120 Hz and from keyed radios with up to 5 W of power located within 36 inches (900 mm) of enclosure.
- G. DDC Controller Spare Processing Capacity:
 1. Include spare processing memory for each controller. RAM, PROM, or EEPROM will implement requirements indicated with the following spare memory:

- a. Network Controllers: 70 percent.
 - b. Programmable Application Controllers: Not less than 70 percent.
 - c. Application-Specific Controllers: Not less than 80 percent.
2. Memory shall support DDC controller's operating system and database and shall include the following:
- a. Monitoring and control.
 - b. Energy management, operation and optimization applications.
 - c. Alarm management.
 - d. Historical trend data of all connected I/O points.
 - e. Maintenance applications.
 - f. Operator interfaces.
 - g. Monitoring of manual overrides.
- H. DDC Controller Spare I/O Point Capacity: Include spare I/O point capacity for each controller as follows:
1. Network Controllers:
- a. 10 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
 - b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
 - 1) AIs: Three.
 - 2) AOs: Three.
 - 3) BIs: Five.
 - 4) BOs: Five.
2. Programmable Application Controllers:
- a. 10 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
 - b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
 - 1) AIs: Three.
 - 2) AOs: Three.
 - 3) BIs: Five.
 - 4) BOs: Five.
3. Application-Specific Controllers:
- a. 10 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
 - b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
 - 1) AIs: Two.
 - 2) AOs: Two.
 - 3) BIs: Two.
 - 4) BOs: Two.
- I. Maintenance and Support: Include the following features to facilitate maintenance and support:
- 1. Mount microprocessor components on circuit cards for ease of removal and replacement.
 - 2. Means to quickly and easily disconnect controller from network.
 - 3. Means to quickly and easily access connect to field test equipment.

4. Visual indication that controller electric power is on, of communication fault or trouble, and that controller is receiving and sending signals to network.

J. General Requirements for CEA-709.1-C DDC Controllers:

1. Controllers shall be LonMark certified.
2. Distinguishable and accessible switch, button, or pin, when pressed shall broadcast its 48-bit Node ID and Program ID over network.
3. TP/FT-10 transceiver according to CEA-709.3 and connections for TP/FT-10 control network wiring.
4. TP/XF-1250 transceiver according to CEA-709.3 and connections for TP/XF-1250 control network wiring.
5. Communicate using CEA-709.1-C protocol.
6. Controllers configured into subnets, as required, to comply with performance requirements indicated.
7. Network communication through LNS network management and database standard for CEA-709.1-C network devices.
8. Locally powered, not powered through network connection.
9. Functionality required to support applications indicated, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Input and outputs indicated and as required to support sequence of operation and application in which it is used. SNVTs shall have meaningful names identifying the value represented by an SNVT. Unless an SNVT of an appropriate engineering type is unavailable, all network variables shall be of an SNVT with engineering units appropriate to value the variable represents.
 - b. Configurable through SCPTs defined in LonMark SCPT List, operator-defined UCPTs, network configuration inputs (NCIs) of an SNVT type defined in LonMark SNVT List, NCIs of an operator-defined network variable type, or hardware settings on controller itself for all settings and parameters used by application in which it is used.
10. Programmable controllers shall conform to LonMark Interoperability Guidelines and have LonMark certification.

K. Input and Output Point Interface:

1. Hardwired input and output points shall connect to network, programmable application and application-specific controllers.
2. Input and output points shall be protected so shorting of point to itself, to another point, or to ground will not damage controller.
3. Input and output points shall be protected from voltage up to 24 V of any duration so that contact will not damage controller.
4. AIs:
 - a. AIs shall include monitoring of low-voltage (zero- to 10-V dc), current (4 to 20 mA) and resistance signals from thermistor and RTD sensors.
 - b. AIs shall be compatible with, and field configurable to, sensor and transmitters installed.
 - c. Controller AIs shall perform analog-to-digital (A-to-D) conversion with a minimum resolution of 12 bits or better to comply with accuracy requirements indicated.
 - d. Signal conditioning including transient rejection shall be provided for each AI.
 - e. Capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span.

- f. Incorporate common-mode noise rejection of at least 50 dB from zero to 100 Hz for differential inputs, and normal-mode noise rejection of at least 20 dB at 60 Hz from a source impedance of 10000 ohms.
5. AOs:
- a. Controller AOs shall perform analog-to-digital (A-to-D) conversion with a minimum resolution of 12 bits or better to comply with accuracy requirements indicated.
 - b. Output signals shall have a range of 4 to 20 mA dc or zero- to 10-V dc as required to include proper control of output device.
 - c. Capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span.
 - d. AOs shall not exhibit a drift of greater than 0.4 percent of range per year.
6. BIs:
- a. Controller BIs shall accept contact closures and shall ignore transients of less than 5-ms duration.
 - b. Isolation and protection against an applied steady-state voltage of up to 180-V ac peak.
 - c. BIs shall include a wetting current of at least 12 mA to be compatible with commonly available control devices and shall be protected against effects of contact bounce and noise.
 - d. BIs shall sense "dry contact" closure without external power (other than that provided by the controller) being applied.
 - e. Pulse accumulation input points shall comply with all requirements of BIs and accept up to 10 pulses per second for pulse accumulation. Buffer shall be provided to totalize pulses. Pulse accumulator shall accept rates of at least 20 pulses per second. The totalized value shall be reset to zero on operator's command.
7. BOs:
- a. Controller BOs shall include relay contact closures or triac outputs for momentary and maintained operation of output devices.
 - 1) Relay contact closures shall have a minimum duration of 0.1 second. Relays shall include at least 180 V of isolation. Electromagnetic interference suppression shall be provided on all output lines to limit transients to non-damaging levels. Minimum contact rating shall be 1 A at 24-V ac.
 - 2) Triac outputs shall include at least 180 V of isolation. Minimum contact rating shall be 1 A at 24-V ac.
 - b. BOs shall include for two-state operation or a pulsed low-voltage signal for pulse-width modulation control.
 - c. BOs shall be selectable for either normally open or normally closed operation.
 - d. Include tristate outputs (two coordinated BOs) for control of three-point floating-type electronic actuators without feedback.
 - e. Limit use of three-point floating devices to VAV terminal unit control applications, and other applications indicated on Drawings, Control algorithms shall operate actuator to one end of its stroke once every 24 hours for verification of operator tracking.

2.15. NETWORK CONTROLLERS

A. General Network Controller Requirements:

1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
2. System shall consist of one or more independent, standalone, microprocessor-based network controllers to manage global strategies indicated.
3. Controller shall have enough memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements.
4. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
5. Operating system of controller shall manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for central monitoring and alarms.
6. Controllers that perform scheduling shall have a real-time clock.
7. Controller shall continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, controller shall assume a predetermined failure mode and generate an alarm notification.
8. Controllers shall be fully programmable.

B. Communication:

1. Network controllers shall communicate with other devices on DDC system Level one network.
2. Network controller also shall perform routing if connected to a network of programmable application and application-specific controllers.

C. Operator Interface:

1. Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation.
2. Local Keypad and Display:
 - a. Equip controller with local keypad and digital display for interrogating and editing data.
 - b. Use of keypad and display shall require security password.

D. Serviceability:

1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Controller shall maintain BIOS and programming information in event of a power loss for at least 72 hours.

2.16. PROGRAMMABLE APPLICATION CONTROLLERS

A. General Programmable Application Controller Requirements:

1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
2. Controller shall have enough memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements.
3. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.

4. Operating system of controller shall manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for central monitoring and alarms.
5. Controllers that perform scheduling shall have a real-time clock.
6. Controller shall continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, controller shall assume a predetermined failure mode and generate an alarm notification.
7. Controllers shall be fully programmable.

B. Communication:

1. Programmable application controllers shall communicate with other devices on network.

C. Operator Interface:

1. Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation.
2. Local Keypad and Display:
 - a. Equip controller with local keypad and digital display for interrogating and editing data.
 - b. Use of keypad and display shall require security password.

D. Serviceability:

1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Controller shall maintain BIOS and programming information in event of a power loss for at least 72 hours.

2.17. APPLICATION-SPECIFIC CONTROLLERS

A. Description: Microprocessor-based controllers, which through hardware or firmware design are dedicated to control a specific piece of equipment. Controllers are not fully user-programmable but are configurable and customizable for operation of equipment they are designed to control.

1. Capable of standalone operation and shall continue to include control functions without being connected to network.
2. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.

B. Communication: Application-specific controllers shall communicate with other application-specific controller and devices on network, and to programmable application and network controllers.

C. Operator Interface: Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation. Connection shall extend to port on space temperature sensor that is connected to controller.

D. Serviceability:

1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Controller shall use nonvolatile memory and maintain all BIOS and programming information in event of power loss.

2.18. CONTROLLER SOFTWARE

A. General Controller Software Requirements:

1. Software applications shall reside and operate in controllers. Editing of applications shall occur at operator workstations.
2. I/O points shall be identified by up to 30-character point name and up to 16-character point descriptor. Same names shall be used at operator workstations.
3. Control functions shall be executed within controllers using DDC algorithms.
4. Controllers shall be configured to use stored default values to ensure fail-safe operation. Default values shall be used when there is a failure of a connected input instrument or loss of communication of a global point value.

B. Security:

1. Operator access shall be secured using individual security passwords and user names.
2. Passwords shall restrict operator to points, applications, and system functions as assigned by system manager.
3. Operator log-on and log-off attempts shall be recorded.
4. System shall protect itself from unauthorized use by automatically logging off after last keystroke. The delay time shall be operator-definable.

C. Scheduling: Include capability to schedule each point or group of points in system. Each schedule shall consist of the following:

1. Weekly Schedule:
 - a. Include separate schedules for each day of week.
 - b. Each schedule should include the capability for start, stop, optimal start, optimal stop, and night economizer.
 - c. Each schedule may consist of up to 10 events.
 - d. When a group of objects are scheduled together, include capability to adjust start and stop times for each member.
2. Exception Schedules:
 - a. Include ability for operator to designate any day of the year as an exception schedule.
 - b. Exception schedules may be defined up to a year in advance. Once an exception schedule is executed, it will be discarded and replaced by regular schedule for that day of week.
3. Holiday Schedules:
 - a. Include capability for operator to define up to 99 special or holiday schedules.
 - b. Schedules may be placed on scheduling calendar and will be repeated each year.

- c. Operator shall be able to define length of each holiday period.
- D. System Coordination:
1. Include standard application for proper coordination of equipment.
 2. Application shall include operator with a method of grouping together equipment based on function and location.
 3. Group may then be used for scheduling and other applications.
- E. Binary Alarms:
1. Each binary point shall be set to alarm based on operator-specified state.
 2. Include capability to automatically and manually disable alarming.
- F. Analog Alarms:
1. Each analog object shall have both high and low alarm limits.
 2. Alarming shall be able to be automatically and manually disabled.
- G. Alarm Reporting:
1. Operator shall be able to determine action to be taken in event of an alarm.
 2. Alarms shall be routed to appropriate operator workstations based on time and other conditions.
 3. Alarm shall be able to start programs, print, be logged in event log, generate custom messages, and display graphics.
- H. Remote Communication:
1. System shall have ability to dial out in the event of an alarm.
- I. Electric Power Demand Limiting:
1. Demand-limiting program shall monitor building or other operator-defined electric power consumption from signals connected to electric power meter or from a watt transducer or current transformer.
 2. Demand-limiting program shall predict probable power demand such that action can be taken to prevent exceeding demand limit. When demand prediction exceeds demand limit, action will be taken to reduce loads in a predetermined manner. When demand prediction indicates demand limit will not be exceeded, action will be taken to restore loads in a predetermined manner.
 3. Demand reduction shall be accomplished by the following means:
 - a. Reset air-handling unit supply temperature set points.
 - b. Reset space temperature set points.
 - c. De-energize equipment based on priority.
 4. Demand-limiting parameters, frequency of calculations, time intervals, and other relevant variables shall be based on the means by which electric power service provider computes demand charges.
 5. Include demand-limiting prediction and control for any individual meter monitored by system or for total of any combination of meters.
 6. Include means operator to make the following changes online:
 - a. Addition and deletion of loads controlled.

- b. Changes in demand intervals.
 - c. Changes in demand limit for meter(s).
 - d. Maximum shutoff time for equipment.
 - e. Minimum shutoff time for equipment.
 - f. Select rotational or sequential shedding and restoring.
 - g. Shed and restore priority.
7. Include the following information and reports, to be available on an hourly, daily, weekly, monthly and annual basis:
- a. Total electric consumption.
 - b. Peak demand.
 - c. Date and time of peak demand.
 - d. Daily peak demand.
- J. Maintenance Management: System shall monitor equipment status and generate maintenance messages based on operator-designated run-time, starts, and calendar date limits.
- K. Sequencing: Include application software based on sequences of operation indicated to properly sequence chillers, boilers, and other applicable HVAC equipment.
- L. Control Loops:
- 1. Support any of the following control loops, as applicable to control required:
 - a. Two-position (on/off, open/close, slow/fast) control.
 - b. Proportional control.
 - c. Proportional plus integral (PI) control.
 - d. Proportional plus integral plus derivative (PID) control.
 - 1) Include PID algorithms with direct or reverse action and anti-windup.
 - 2) Algorithm shall calculate a time-varying analog value used to position an output or stage a series of outputs.
 - 3) Controlled variable, set point, and PID gains shall be operator-selectable.
 - e. Adaptive (automatic tuning).
- M. Staggered Start: Application shall prevent all controlled equipment from simultaneously restarting after a power outage. Order which equipment (or groups of equipment) is started, along with the time delay between starts, shall be operator-selectable.
- N. Energy Calculations:
- 1. Include software to allow instantaneous power or flow rates to be accumulated and converted to energy usage data.
 - 2. Include an algorithm that calculates a sliding-window average (rolling average). Algorithm shall be flexible to allow window intervals to be operator specified (such as 15, 30, or 60 minutes).
 - 3. Include an algorithm that calculates a fixed-window average. A digital input signal shall define start of window period (such as signal from utility meter) to synchronize fixed-window average with that used by utility.
- O. Anti-Short Cycling:

1. BO points shall be protected from short cycling.
2. Feature shall allow minimum on-time and off-time to be selected.

P. On and Off Control with Differential:

1. Include an algorithm that allows a BO to be cycled based on a controlled variable and set point.
2. Algorithm shall be direct- or reverse-acting and incorporate an adjustable differential.

Q. Run-Time Totalization:

1. Include software to totalize run-times for all BI and BO points.
2. A high run-time alarm shall be assigned, if required, by operator.

2.19. ENCLOSURES

A. General Enclosure Requirements:

1. House each controller and associated control accessories in a single enclosure. Enclosure shall serve as central tie-in point for control devices such as switches, transmitters, transducers, power supplies and transformers.
2. Do not house more than one controller in a single enclosure.
3. Include enclosure door with key locking mechanism. Key locks alike for all enclosures and include one pair of keys per enclosure.
4. Equip doors of enclosures housing controllers and components with analog or digital displays with windows to allow visual observation of displays without opening enclosure door.
5. Individual wall-mounted single-door enclosures shall not exceed 36 inches (900 mm) wide and 48 inches (1200 mm) high.
6. Include wall-mounted enclosures with brackets suitable for mounting enclosures to wall or freestanding support stand as indicated.
7. Supply each enclosure with a complete set of as-built schematics, tubing, and wiring diagrams and product literature located in a pocket on inside of door. For enclosures with windows, include pocket on bottom of enclosure.

B. Internal Arrangement:

1. Internal layout of enclosure shall group and protect pneumatic, electric, and electronic components associated with a controller, but not an integral part of controller.
2. Arrange layout to group similar products together.
3. Include a barrier between line-voltage and low-voltage electrical and electronic products.
4. Factory or shop install products, tubing, cabling and wiring complying with requirements and standards indicated.
5. Terminate field cable and wire using heavy-duty terminal blocks.
6. Include spare terminals, equal to not less than 20 percent of used terminals.
7. Include spade lugs for stranded cable and wire.
8. Install a maximum of two wires on each side of a terminal.
9. Include enclosure field power supply with a toggle-type switch located at entrance inside enclosure to disconnect power.
10. Include enclosure with a line-voltage nominal 20-A GFCI duplex receptacle for service and testing tools. Wire receptacle on hot side of enclosure disconnect switch and include with a 5-A circuit breaker.
11. Mount products within enclosure on removable internal panel(s).

12. Include products mounted in enclosures with engraved, laminated phenolic nameplates (black letters on a white background). The nameplates shall have at least 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) high lettering.
13. Route tubing cable and wire located inside enclosure within a raceway with a continuous removable cover.
14. Label each end of cable, wire and tubing in enclosure following an approved identification system that extends from field I/O connection and all intermediate connections throughout length to controller connection.
15. Size enclosure internal panel to include at least 25 percent spare area on face of panel.

C. Environmental Requirements:

1. Evaluate temperature and humidity requirements of each product to be installed within each enclosure.
2. Calculate enclosure internal operating temperature considering heat dissipation of all products installed within enclosure and ambient effects (solar, conduction and wind) on enclosure.
3. Where required by application, include temperature-controlled electrical heat to maintain inside of enclosure above minimum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.
4. Where required by application, include temperature-controlled ventilation fans with filtered louver(s) to maintain inside of enclosure below maximum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.
5. Include temperature-controlled cooling within the enclosure for applications where ventilation fans cannot maintain inside temperature of enclosure below maximum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.
6. Where required by application, include humidity-controlled electric dehumidifier or cooling to maintain inside of enclosure below maximum relative humidity of product with most stringent requirement and to prevent surface condensation within enclosure.

D. Accessories:

1. Ventilation Fans, Filtered Intake and Exhaust Grilles:
 - a. Number and size of fans, filters and grilles as required by application.
 - b. Compact cooling fans engineered for 50,000 hours of continuous operation without lubrication or service.
 - c. Fans capable of being installed on any surface and in any position within enclosure for spot cooling or air circulation.
 - d. Thermostatic control with adjustable set point from 32 to 140 deg F (Zero to 60 deg C).
 - e. Airflow Capacity at Zero Pressure:
 - 1) 4-Inch (100-mm) Fan: 100 cfm (47 L/s).
 - 2) 6-Inch (150-mm) Fan: 240 cfm (113 L/s).
 - 3) 10-Inch (250-mm) Fan: 560 cfm (264 L/s).
 - f. Maximum operating temperature of 158 deg F (70 deg C).
 - g. 4-inch (100-mm) fan thermally protected and provided with permanently lubricated ball-bearings.
 - h. 6- and 10-inch (150- and 250-mm) fans with ball-bearing construction and split capacitor motors thermally protected to avoid premature failure.
 - i. Dynamically balanced impellers molded from polycarbonate material.
 - j. Fan furnished with power cord and polarized plug for power connection.

- k. Fan brackets, finger guards and mounting hardware provided with fans to complete installation.
- l. Removable Intake and Exhaust Grilles: stainless steel of size to match fan size and suitable for NEMA 250, Types 1 and 12 enclosures.
- m. Filters for NEMA 250, Type 1 Enclosures: Washable aluminum, of a size to match intake grille.
- n. Filters for NEMA 250, Type 12 Enclosures: Disposable, of a size to match intake grille.

2.20. RELAYS

A. General-Purpose Relays:

1. Relays shall be heavy duty and rated for at least 10 A at 250-V ac and 60 Hz.
2. Relays shall be either double pole double throw (DPDT) or three-pole double throw, depending on the control application.
3. Use a plug-in-style relay with an eight-pin octal plug for DPDT relays and an 11-pin octal plug for three-pole double-throw relays.
4. Construct the contacts of either silver cadmium oxide or gold.
5. Enclose the relay in a clear transparent polycarbonate dust-tight cover.
6. Relays shall have LED indication and a manual reset and push-to-test button.
7. Performance:
 - a. Mechanical Life: At least 10 million cycles.
 - b. Electrical Life: At least 100,000 cycles at rated load.
 - c. Pickup Time: 15 ms or less.
 - d. Dropout Time: 10 ms or less.
 - e. Pull-in Voltage: 85 percent of rated voltage.
 - f. Dropout Voltage: 50 percent of nominal rated voltage.
 - g. Power Consumption: 2 VA.
 - h. Ambient Operating Temperatures: Minus 40 to 115 deg F (Minus 40 to 46 deg C).
8. Equip relays with coil transient suppression to limit transients to non-damaging levels.
9. Plug each relay into an industry-standard, 35-mm DIN rail socket. Plug all relays located in control panels into sockets that are mounted on a DIN rail.
10. Relay socket shall have screw terminals. Mold into the socket the coincident screw terminal numbers and associated octal pin numbers.

B. Multifunction Time-Delay Relays:

1. Relays shall be continuous duty and rated for at least 10 A at 240-V ac and 60 Hz.
2. Relays shall be DPDT relay with up to eight programmable functions to provide on/off delay, interval and recycle timing functions.
3. Use a plug-in-style relay with either an 8- or 11-pin octal plug.
4. Construct the contacts of either silver cadmium oxide or gold.
5. Enclose the relay in a dust-tight cover.
6. Include knob and dial scale for setting delay time.
7. Performance:
 - a. Mechanical Life: At least 10 million cycles.
 - b. Electrical Life: At least 100,000 cycles at rated load.
 - c. Timing Ranges: Multiple ranges from 0.1 seconds to 100 minutes.
 - d. Repeatability: Within 2 percent.
 - e. Recycle Time: 45 ms.
 - f. Minimum Pulse Width Control: 50 ms.
 - g. Power Consumption: 5 VA or less at 120-V ac.

h. Ambient Operating Temperatures: Minus 40 to 115 deg F (Minus 40 to 46 deg C).

8. Equip relays with coil transient suppression to limit transients to non-damaging levels.
9. Plug each relay into an industry-standard, 35-mm DIN rail socket. Plug all relays located in control panels into sockets that are mounted on a DIN rail.
10. Relay socket shall have screw terminals. Mold into the socket the coincident screw terminal numbers and associated octal pin numbers.

C. Latching Relays:

1. Relays shall be continuous duty and rated for at least 10 A at 250-V ac and 60 Hz.
2. Relays shall be either DPDT or three-pole double throw, depending on the control application.
3. Use a plug-in-style relay with a multi-bladed plug.
4. Construct the contacts of either silver cadmium oxide or gold.
5. Enclose the relay in a clear transparent polycarbonate dust-tight cover.
6. Performance:
 - a. Mechanical Life: At least 10 million cycles.
 - b. Electrical Life: At least 100,000 cycles at rated load.
 - c. Pickup Time: 15 ms or less.
 - d. Dropout Time: 10 ms or less.
 - e. Pull-in Voltage: 85 percent of rated voltage.
 - f. Dropout Voltage: 50 percent of nominal rated voltage.
 - g. Power Consumption: 2 VA.
 - h. Ambient Operating Temperatures: Minus 40 to 115 deg F (Minus 40 to 46 deg C).
7. Equip relays with coil transient suppression to limit transients to non-damaging levels.
8. Plug each relay into an industry-standard, 35-mm DIN rail socket. Plug all relays located in control panels into sockets that are mounted on a DIN rail.
9. Relay socket shall have screw terminals. Mold into the socket the coincident screw terminal numbers and associated octal pin numbers.

D. Current Sensing Relay:

1. Monitors ac current.
2. Independent adjustable controls for pickup and dropout current.
3. Energized when supply voltage is present and current is above pickup setting.
4. De-energizes when monitored current is below dropout current.
5. Dropout current is adjustable from 50 to 95 percent of pickup current.
6. Include a current transformer, if required for application.
7. House current sensing relay and current transformer in its own enclosure. Use NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure for indoors and NEMA 250, Type 4 for outdoors.

E. Combination On-Off Status Sensor and On-Off Relay:

1. Description:
 - a. On-off control and status indication in a single device.
 - b. LED status indication of activated relay and current trigger.
 - c. Closed-Open-Auto override switch located on the load side of the relay.
2. Performance:

- a. Ambient Temperature: Minus 30 to 140 deg F (Minus 34 to 60 deg C).
 - b. Voltage Rating: Single-phase loads rated for 300-V ac. Three-phase loads rated for 600-V ac.
3. Status Indication:
- a. Current Sensor: Integral sensing for single-phase loads up to 20 A and external solid or split sensing ring for three-phase loads up to 150 A.
 - b. Current Sensor Range: As required by application.
 - c. Current Set Point: Fixed or adjustable as required by application.
 - d. Current Sensor Output:
 - 1) Solid-state, single-pole double-throw contact rated for 30-V ac and dc and for 0.4 A.
 - 2) Solid-state, single-pole double-throw contact rated for 120-V ac and 1.0 A.
 - 3) Analog, zero- to 5- or 10-V dc.
 - 4) Analog, 4 to 20 mA, loop powered.
4. Relay: Single-pole double-throw, continuous-duty coil; rated for 10-million mechanical cycles.
5. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.

2.21. ELECTRICAL POWER DEVICES

A. Transformers:

- 1. Transformer shall be sized for the total connected load, plus an additional 25 percent of connected load.
- 2. Transformer shall be at least 100 VA.
- 3. Transformer shall have both primary and secondary fuses.

B. Power-Line Conditioner:

- 1. General Power-Line Conditioner Requirements:
 - a. Design to ensure maximum reliability, serviceability and performance.
 - b. Overall function of the power-line conditioner is to receive raw, polluted electrical power and purify it for use by electronic equipment. The power-line conditioner shall provide isolated, regulated, transient and noise-free sinusoidal power to loads served.
- 2. Standards: NRTL listed per UL 1012.
- 3. Performance:
 - a. Single phase, continuous, 100 percent duty rated KVA/KW capacity. Design to supply power for linear or nonlinear, high crest factor, resistive and reactive loads.
 - b. Automatically regulate output voltage to within 2 percent or better with input voltage fluctuations of plus 10 to minus 20 percent of nominal when system is loaded 100 percent. Use Variable Range Regulation to obtain improved line voltage regulation when operating under less than full load conditions.

- 1) At 75 Percent Load: Output voltage automatically regulated to within 3 percent with input voltage fluctuations of plus 10 to minus 35 percent of nominal.
 - 2) At 50 Percent Load: Output voltage automatically regulated to within 3 percent with input voltage fluctuations of plus 10 to minus 40 percent of nominal.
 - 3) At 25 Percent Load: Output voltage automatically regulated to within 3 percent with input voltage fluctuations of plus 10 to minus 45 percent of nominal.
- c. With input voltage distortion of up to 40 percent, limit the output voltage sine wave to a maximum harmonic content of 5 percent.
 - d. Automatically regulate output voltage to within 2.5 percent when load (resistive) changes from zero percent to 100 percent to zero percent.
 - e. Output voltage returns to 95 percent of nominal level within two cycles and to 100 percent within three cycles when the output is taken from no load to full resistive load or vice-versa. Recovery from partial resistive load changes is corrected in a shorter period of time.
 - f. K Factor: 30, designed to operate with nonlinear, non-sinusoidal, high crest factor loads without overheating.
 - g. Input power factor within 0.95 approaching unity with load power factor as poor as 0.6.
 - h. Attenuate load-generated odd current harmonics 23 dB at the input.
 - i. Electrically isolate the primary from the secondary. Meet isolation criteria as defined in NFPA 70, Article 250-5D.
 - j. Lighting and Surge Protection: Compares to UL 1449 rating of 330 V when subjected to Category B3 (6000 V/3000 A) combination waveform as established by IEEE C62.41.
 - k. Common-mode noise attenuation of 140 dB.
 - l. Transverse-mode noise attenuation of 120 dB.
 - m. With loss of input power for up to 16.6 ms, the output sine wave remains at usable ac voltage levels.
 - n. Reliability of 200,000 hours' MTBF.
 - o. At full load, when measured at 1-m distance, audible noise is not to exceed 54 dB.
 - p. Approximately 92 percent efficient at full load.
4. Transformer Construction:
- a. Ferro resonant, dry type, convection cooled, 600V class. Transformer windings of Class H (220 deg C) insulated copper.
 - b. Use a Class H installation system throughout with operating temperatures not to exceed 150 deg C over a 40-deg C ambient temperature.
 - c. Configure transformer primary for multi-input voltage. Include input terminals for source conductors and ground.
 - d. Manufacture transformer core using M-6 grade, grain-oriented, stress-relieved transformer steel.
 - e. Configure transformer secondary in a 240/120-V split with a 208-V tap or straight 120 V, depending on power output size.
 - f. Electrically isolate the transformer secondary windings from the primary windings. Bond neutral conductor to cabinet enclosure and output neutral terminal.
 - g. Include interface terminals for output power hot, neutral and ground conductors.
 - h. Label leads, wires and terminals to correspond with circuit wiring diagram.
 - i. Vacuum impregnate transformer with epoxy resin.

5. Cabinet Construction:
 - a. Design for panel or floor mounting.
 - b. NEMA 250, Type 1, general-purpose, indoor enclosure.
 - c. Manufacture the cabinet from heavy gauge steel complying with UL 50.
 - d. Include a textured baked-on paint finish.

C. Transient Voltage Suppression and High-Frequency Noise Filter Unit:

1. The maximum continuous operating voltage shall be at least 125 percent.
2. The operating frequency range shall be 47 to 63 Hz.
3. Protection modes according to NEMA LS-1.
4. The rated single-pulse surge current capacity, for each mode of protection, shall be no less than the following:
 - a. Line to Neutral: 45,000 A.
 - b. Neutral to Ground: 45,000 A.
 - c. Line to Ground: 45,000 A.
 - d. Per Phase: 90,000 A.
5. Clamping voltages shall be in compliance with test and evaluation procedures defined in NEMA LS-1. Maximum clamping voltage shall be as follows:
 - a. Line to Neutral: 360 V.
 - b. Line to Ground: 360 V.
 - c. Neutral to Ground: 360 V.
6. Electromagnetic interference and RF interference noise rejection or attenuation values shall comply with test and evaluation procedures defined in NEMA LS-1.
 - a. Line to Neutral:
 - 1) 100 kHz: 42 dB.
 - 2) 1 MHz: 25 dB.
 - 3) 10 MHz: 21 dB.
 - 4) 100 MHz: 36 dB.
 - b. Line to Ground:
 - 1) 100 kHz: 16 dB.
 - 2) 1 MHz: 55 dB.
 - 3) 10 MHz: 81 dB.
 - 4) 100 MHz: 80 dB.
7. Unit shall have LED status indicator that extinguishes to indicate a failure.
8. Unit shall be listed by an NRTL as a transient voltage surge suppressor per UL 1449, and as an electromagnetic interference filter per UL 1283.
9. Unit shall not generate any appreciable magnetic field.
10. Unit shall not generate an audible noise.

D. DC Power Supply:

1. Plug-in style suitable for mating with a standard eight-pin octal socket. Include the power supply with a mating mounting socket.
2. Enclose circuitry in a housing.

3. Include both line and load regulation to ensure a stable output. To protect both the power supply and the load, power supply shall have an automatic current limiting circuit.
4. Performance:
 - a. Output voltage nominally 25-V dc within 5 percent.
 - b. Output current up to 100 mA.
 - c. Input voltage nominally 120-V ac, 60 Hz.
 - d. Load regulation within 0.5 percent from zero- to 100-mA load.
 - e. Line regulation within 0.5 percent at a 100-mA load for a 10 percent line change.
 - f. Stability within 0.1 percent of rated volts for 24 hours after a 20-minute warmup.

2.22. CONTROL WIRE AND CABLE

A. Wire: Single conductor control wiring above 24 V.

1. Wire size shall be at least No. 16 AWG.
2. Conductor shall be 7/24 soft annealed copper strand with 2- to 2.5-inch (50- to 65-mm) lay.
3. Conductor insulation shall be 600 V, Type THWN or Type THHN, and 90 deg C according to UL 83.
4. Conductor colors shall be black (hot), white (neutral), and green (ground).
5. Furnish wire on spools.

B. Single Twisted Shielded Instrumentation Cable above 24 V:

1. Wire size shall be a minimum No. 18 AWG.
2. Conductors shall be a twisted, 7/24 soft annealed copper strand with a 2- to 2.5-inch (50- to 65-mm) lay.
3. Conductor insulation shall have a Type THHN/THWN or Type TFN rating.
4. Shielding shall be 100 percent type, 0.35/0.5-mil aluminum/Mylar tape, helically applied with 25 percent overlap, and aluminum side in with tinned copper drain wire.
5. Outer jacket insulation shall have a 600-V, 90-deg C rating and shall be Type TC cable.
6. For twisted pair, conductor colors shall be black and white. For twisted triad, conductor colors shall be black, red and white.
7. Furnish wire on spools.

C. Single Twisted Shielded Instrumentation Cable 24 V and Less:

1. Wire size shall be a minimum No. 18 AWG.
2. Conductors shall be a twisted, 7/24 soft annealed copper stranding with a 2- to 2.5-inch (50- to 65-mm) lay.
3. Conductor insulation shall have a nominal 15-mil thickness, constructed from flame-retardant PVC.
4. Shielding shall be 100 percent type, 1.35-mil aluminum/polymer tape, helically applied with 25 percent overlap, and aluminum side in with tinned copper drain wire.
5. Outer jacket insulation shall have a 300-V, 105-deg C rating and shall be Type PLTC cable.
6. For twisted pair, conductor colors shall be black and white. For twisted triad, conductor colors shall be black, red and white.
7. Furnish wire on spools.

- D. LAN and Communication Cable: Comply with DDC system manufacturer requirements for network being installed.
1. Cable shall be plenum rated.
 2. Cable shall comply with NFPA 70.
 3. Cable shall have a unique color that is different from other cables used on Project.
 4. Copper Cable for Ethernet Network:
 - a. 1000BASE-T or 1000BASE-TX.
 - b. TIA/EIA 568, [Category 5e] [or] [Category 6].
 - c. Minimum [No. 24] [No. 22] AWG solid.
 - d. Shielded Twisted Pair (STP).
 - e. Thermoplastic insulated conductors, enclosed in a thermoplastic outer jacket, Class CMP as plenum rated.

2.23. RACEWAYS FOR CONTROL WIRING, CABLING, AND TUBING

A. Metal Conduits, Tubing, and Fittings:

1. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. GRC: Comply with NEMA ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
3. ARC: Comply with NEMA ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.
4. IMC: Comply with NEMA ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
5. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated IMC.
 - a. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 - b. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.
6. EMT: Comply with NEMA ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
7. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
8. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA ANSI FB 1 and UL 514B.
 - a. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.
 - b. Fittings for EMT:
 - 1) Material: Steel or die cast.
 - 2) Type: compression.
 - c. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
 - d. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
9. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

B. Metal Wireways and Auxiliary Gutters:

1. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.

- a. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 2. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- 3. Wireway Covers: Hinged type unless otherwise indicated.
- 4. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.24. CONTROL POWER WIRING AND RACEWAYS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" electrical power conductors and cables.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power raceways and boxes.

2.25. ACCESSORIES

- A. Damper Blade Limit Switches:
 - 1. Sense positive open and/or closed position of the damper blades.
 - 2. NEMA 250, Type 13, oil-tight construction.
 - 3. Arrange for the mounting application.
 - 4. Additional waterproof enclosure when required by its environment.
 - 5. Arrange to prevent "over-center" operation.
- B. Manual Valves:
 - 1. Ball Type:
 - a. Body: Bronze ASTM B 62 or ASTM B 61.
 - b. Ball: Type 316 stainless steel.
 - c. Stem: Type 316 stainless steel.
 - d. Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
 - e. Packing Ring: Reinforced PTFE.
 - f. Lever: Stainless steel with a vinyl grip.
 - g. 600 WOG.
 - h. Threaded end connections.

2.26. IDENTIFICATION

- A. Control Equipment, Instruments, and Control Devices:
 - 1. Engraved tag bearing unique identification.
 - a. Include instruments with unique identification identified by equipment being controlled or monitored, followed by point identification.
 - 2. Tag shall consist of white lettering on black background.
 - 3. Tag shall be engraved phenolic consisting of three layers of rigid laminate. Top and bottom layers are color-coded black with contrasting white center exposed by engraving through outer layer.
 - 4. Tag shall be fastened with drive pins.

5. Instruments, control devices and actuators with Project-specific identification tags having unique identification numbers following requirements indicated and provided by original manufacturer do not require an additional tag.

B. Valve Tags:

1. Brass tags and brass chains attached to valve.
2. Tags shall be at least 1.5 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
3. Include tag with unique valve identification indicating control influence such as flow, level, pressure, or temperature; followed by location of valve, and followed by three-digit sequential number. For example: TV-1.001.
4. Valves with Project-specific identification tags having unique identification numbers following requirements indicated and provided by original manufacturer do not require an additional tag.

C. Raceway and Boxes:

1. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
2. Paint cover plates on junction boxes and conduit same color as the tape banding for conduits. After painting, label cover plate "HVAC Controls," using an engraved phenolic tag.
3. For raceways housing pneumatic tubing, add a phenolic tag labeled "HVAC Instrument Air Tubing."
4. For raceways housing air signal tubing, add a phenolic tag labeled "HVAC Air Signal Tubing."

D. Equipment Warning Labels:

1. Acrylic label with pressure-sensitive adhesive back and peel-off protective jacket.
2. Lettering size shall be at least 14-point type with white lettering on red background.
3. Warning label shall read "CAUTION-Equipment operated under remote automatic control and may start or stop at any time without warning. Switch electric power disconnecting means to OFF position before servicing."
4. Lettering shall be enclosed in a white line border. Edge of label shall extend at least 0.25 inch (6 mm) beyond white border.

2.27. SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate the following according to industry standards for each product, and to verify DDC system reliability specified in performance requirements:
1. DDC controllers.
 2. Gateways.
 3. Routers.
 4. Operator workstations.
- B. Product(s) and material(s) will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates.
- B. Examine roughing-in for products to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
 - 1. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
 - 2. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where product will be installed.
- D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2. DDC SYSTEM INTERFACE WITH OTHER SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

- A. Communication Interface to Equipment with Integral Controls:
 - 1. DDC system shall have communication interface with equipment having integral controls and having a communication interface for remote monitoring or control.
 - 2. Equipment to Be Connected:
 - a. Domestic water booster pumps specified in Section 221123.13 "Domestic-Water Packaged Booster Pumps."
 - b. Heat pumps.
 - c. Heat wheels and heat exchangers specified in Section 237200 "Air-to-Air Energy Recovery Equipment."
 - d. Switchboards specified in Section 262300 "Low-Voltage Switchgear."
 - e. Variable-frequency controllers specified in Section 262923 "Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers."
 - f. Generator sets specified in Section 263213 "Engine Generators."
- B. Communication Interface to Other Building Systems:
 - 1. DDC system shall have a communication interface with systems having a communication interface.
 - 2. Systems to Be Connected:
 - a. Power monitoring specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."

3.3. CONTROL DEVICES FOR INSTALLATION BY INSTALLERS

- A. Deliver selected control devices, specified in indicated HVAC instrumentation and control device Sections, to identified equipment and systems manufacturers for factory installation and to identify installers for field installation.
- B. Deliver the following to duct fabricator and Installer for installation in ductwork. Include installation instructions to Installer and supervise installation for compliance with requirements.
 - 1. DDC control dampers, which are specified in Section 230923.12 "DDC Control Dampers."
- C. Deliver the following to plumbing and HVAC piping installers for installation in piping. Include installation instructions to Installer and supervise installation for compliance with requirements.
 - 1. DDC control valves, which are specified in Section 230923.11 "Control Valves."
 - 2. Pipe-mounted sensors, switches and transmitters. Liquid temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters
 - 3. Pipe mounted thermowells. Liquid thermowells.

3.4. CONTROL DEVICES FOR EQUIPMENT MANUFACTURER FACTORY INSTALLATION

- A. Deliver the following to terminal unit manufacturer for factory installation. Include installation instructions to terminal unit manufacturer.
 - 1. Programmable application or application-specific controller.
 - 2. Electric damper actuator. Dampers actuators are specified in Section 230923.12 "Control Dampers."
 - 3. Unit-mounted flow and pressure sensors, transmitters and transducers. Flow sensors, transmitters, and transducers are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments." Pressure sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.23 "Pressure Instruments."
 - 4. Unit-mounted temperature sensors. Air-temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
 - 5. Relays.
 - 6. <Insert additional control devices>.

3.5. GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install products to satisfy more stringent of all requirements indicated.
- B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- C. Support products, tubing, piping wiring and raceways. Brace products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment when subjected to a force.
- D. If codes and referenced standards are more stringent than requirements indicated, comply with requirements in codes and referenced standards.
- E. Fabricate openings and install sleeves in ceilings, floors, roof, and walls required by installation of products. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, and cutting, check for concealed work to avoid damage. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.

- F. Firestop penetrations made in fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- G. Seal penetrations made in acoustically rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- H. Welding Requirements:
 - 1. Restrict welding and burning to supports and bracing.
 - 2. No equipment shall be cut or welded without approval. Welding or cutting will not be approved if there is risk of damage to adjacent Work.
 - 3. Welding, where approved, shall be by inert-gas electric arc process and shall be performed by qualified welders according to applicable welding codes.
 - 4. If requested on-site, show satisfactory evidence of welder certificates indicating ability to perform welding work intended.
- I. Fastening Hardware:
 - 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that damage surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening fasteners.
 - 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
 - 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- J. If product locations are not indicated, install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit service and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks without removal of permanently installed furniture and equipment.

3.6. OPERATOR WORKSTATION INSTALLATION

- A. Desktop Operator Workstations Installation:
 - 1. Install operator workstation(s) at location(s) directed by Owner.
 - 2. Install multiple-receptacle power strip with cord for use in connecting multiple workstation components to a single duplex electrical power receptacle.
 - 3. Install software on workstation(s) and verify software functions properly.
 - 4. Develop Project-specific graphics, trends, reports, logs and historical database.
- B. Portable Operator Workstations Installation:
 - 1. Turn over portable operator workstations to Owner at Substantial Completion.
 - 2. Install software on workstation(s) and verify software functions properly.
- C. Color Graphics Application:
 - 1. Use system schematics indicated as starting point to create graphics.
 - 2. Develop Project-specific library of symbols for representing system equipment and products.
 - 3. Incorporate digital images of Project-completed installation into graphics where beneficial to enhance effect.
 - 4. Submit sketch of graphic layout with description of all text for each graphic for Owner's and Engineer's review before creating graphic using graphics software.
 - 5. Seek Owner input in graphics development once using graphics software.
 - 6. Final editing shall be done on-site with Owner's and Engineers review and feedback.
 - 7. Refine graphics as necessary for Owner acceptance.

8. On receiving Owner acceptance, print a hard copy for inclusion in operation and maintenance manual. Prepare a scanned copy PDF file of each graphic and include with softcopy of DDC system operation and maintenance manual.

3.7. ROUTER INSTALLATION

- A. Install routers if required for DDC system communication interface requirements indicated.
 1. Install router(s) required to suit indicated requirements.
- B. Test router to verify that communication interface functions properly.

3.8. CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install controllers in enclosures to comply with indicated requirements.
- B. Connect controllers to field power supply.
- C. Install controller with latest version of applicable software and configure to execute requirements indicated.
- D. Test and adjust controllers to verify operation of connected I/O to achieve performance indicated requirements while executing sequences of operation.
- E. Installation of Network Controllers:
 1. Quantity and location of network controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
 2. Install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.
 3. Top of controller shall be within 72 inches (1800 mm) of finished floor.
- F. Installation of Programmable Application Controllers:
 1. Quantity and location of programmable application controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
 2. Install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.
 3. Top of controller shall be within 72 inches (1800 mm) of finished floor.
- G. Application-Specific Controllers:
 1. Quantity and location of application-specific controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
 2. For controllers not mounted directly on equipment being controlled, install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.

3.9. ENCLOSURES INSTALLATION

- A. Install the following items in enclosures, to comply with indicated requirements:
 1. Gateways.
 2. Routers.
 3. Controllers.
 4. Electrical power devices.
 5. Relays.
 6. Accessories.

7. Instruments.
8. Actuators

- B. Install continuous and fully accessible wireways to connect conduit, wire, and cable to multiple adjacent enclosures. Wireway used for application shall have protection equal to NEMA 250 rating of connected enclosures.

3.10. ELECTRIC POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect electrical power to DDC system products requiring electrical power connections.
- B. Design of electrical power to products not indicated with electric power is delegated to DDC system provider and installing trade. Work shall comply with NFPA 70 and other requirements indicated.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers" for electrical power circuit breakers.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical power conductors and cables.
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power raceways and boxes.

3.11. IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for identification products and installation.
- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with unique identification on face for each of the following:
 1. Operator workstation.
 2. Gateway.
 3. Router.
 4. Protocol analyzer.
 5. DDC controller.
 6. Enclosure.
 7. Electrical power device.
 8. Accessory.
- C. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with unique instrument identification on face of each instrument connected to a DDC controller.
- D. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with identification on face of each control damper and valve actuator connected to a DDC controller.
- E. Where product is installed above accessible tile ceiling, also install matching engraved phenolic nameplate with identification on face of ceiling grid located directly below.
- F. Where product is installed above an inaccessible ceiling, also install engraved phenolic nameplate with identification on face of access door directly below.
- G. Warning Labels:

1. Shall be permanently attached to equipment that can be automatically started by DDC control system.
2. Shall be located in highly visible location near power service entry points.

3.12. NETWORK INSTALLATION

- A. Install copper cable when connecting between the following network devices:
 1. Operator workstations.
 2. Operator workstations and network controllers.
 3. Network controllers.
- B. Install copper cable when connecting between the following:
 1. Gateways.
 2. Gateways and network controllers or programmable application controllers.
 3. Routers.
 4. Routers and network controllers or programmable application controllers.
 5. Network controllers and programmable application controllers.
 6. Programmable application controllers.
 7. Programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers.
 8. Application-specific controllers.
- C. Install network cable in continuous raceway.
 1. Where indicated on Drawings, cable trays may be used for copper cable in lieu of conduit.

3.13. NETWORK NAMING AND NUMBERING

- A. Coordinate with Owner and provide unique naming and addressing for networks and devices.
- B. ASHRAE 135 Networks:
 1. Address:
 - a. Every network device shall have an assigned and documented MAC address unique to its network.
 - b. Ethernet Networks: Document MAC address assigned at its creation.
 - c. ARCNET or MS/TP networks: Assign from 00 to 64.
 2. Network Numbering:
 - a. Assign unique numbers to each new network.
 - b. Provide ability for changing network number through device switches or operator interface.
 - c. DDC system, with all possible connected LANs, can contain up to 65,534 unique networks.
 3. Device Object Identifier Property Number:
 - a. Assign unique device object identifier property numbers or device instances for each device network.

- b. Provide for future modification of device instance number by device switches or operator interface.
 - c. LAN shall support up to 4,194,302 unique devices.
4. Device Object Name Property Text:
- a. Device object name property field shall support 32 minimum printable characters.
 - b. Assign unique device "Object Name" property names with plain-English descriptive names for each device.
 - 1) Example 1: Device object name for device controlling boiler plant at Building 1000 would be "HW System B1000."
 - 2) Example 2: Device object name for a VAV terminal unit controller could be "VAV unit 102".
5. Object Name Property Text for Other Than Device Objects:
- a. Object name property field shall support 32 minimum printable characters.
 - b. Assign object name properties with plain-English names descriptive of application.
 - 1) Example 1: "Zone 1 Temperature."
 - 2) Example 2 "Fan Start and Stop."
6. Object Identifier Property Number for Other Than Device Objects:
- a. Assign object identifier property numbers according to Drawings indicated.
 - b. If not indicated, object identifier property numbers may be assigned at Installer's discretion but must be approved by Owner in advance, be documented and be unique for like object types within device.

3.14. CONTROL WIRE, CABLE AND RACEWAYS INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with TIA 568-C.1.
- C. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
 - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
 - 2. Comply with requirements for cable trays specified in Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems."
 - 3. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- D. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
- E. Field Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

F. Conduit Installation:

1. Install conduit expansion joints where conduit runs exceed 200 feet (60 m), and conduit crosses building expansion joints.
2. Coordinate conduit routing with other trades to avoid conflicts with ducts, pipes and equipment and service clearance.
3. Maintain at least 3-inch (75-mm) separation where conduits run axially above or below ducts and pipes.
4. Limit above-grade conduit runs to 100 feet (30 m) without pull or junction box.
5. Do not install raceways or electrical items on any "explosion-relief" walls, or rotating equipment.
6. Do not fasten conduits onto the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
7. Flexible conduit is permitted only where flexibility and vibration control is required.
8. Limit flexible conduit to 3 feet (1 m) long.
9. Conduit shall be continuous from outlet to outlet, from outlet to enclosures, pull and junction boxes, and shall be secured to boxes in such manner that each system shall be electrically continuous throughout.
10. Direct bury conduits underground or install in concrete-encased duct bank where indicated.
 - a. Use rigid, nonmetallic, Schedule 80 PVC.
 - b. Provide a burial depth according to NFPA 70, but not less than 24 inches (600 mm).
11. Secure threaded conduit entering an instrument enclosure, cabinet, box, and trough, with a locknut on outside and inside, such that conduit system is electrically continuous throughout. Provide a metal bushing on inside with insulated throats. Locknuts shall be the type designed to bite into the metal or, on inside of enclosure, shall have a grounding wedge lug under locknut.
12. Conduit box-type connectors for conduit entering enclosures shall have an insulated throat.
13. Connect conduit entering enclosures in wet locations with box-type connectors or with watertight sealing locknuts or other fittings.
14. Offset conduits where entering surface-mounted equipment.
15. Seal conduit runs used by sealing fittings to prevent the circulation of air for the following:
 - a. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
 - b. Conduit extending into pressurized duct and equipment.
 - c. Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.

G. Wire and Cable Installation:

1. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install control wiring and cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
2. Install cables with protective sheathing that is waterproof and capable of withstanding continuous temperatures of 90 deg C with no measurable effect on physical and electrical properties of cable.
 - a. Provide shielding to prevent interference and distortion from adjacent cables and equipment.
3. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.

4. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
5. UTP Cable Installation:
 - a. Comply with TIA 568-C.2.
 - b. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination, to maintain cable geometry.
6. Installation of Cable Routed Exposed under Raised Floors:
 - a. Install plenum-rated cable only.
 - b. Install cabling after the flooring system has been installed in raised floor areas.
 - c. Coil cable 6 feet (1.8 m) long not less than 12 inches (300 mm) in diameter below each feed point.
7. Identify each wire on each end and at each terminal with a number-coded identification tag. Each wire shall have a unique tag.
8. Provide strain relief.
9. Terminate wiring in a junction box.
 - a. Clamp cable over jacket in junction box.
 - b. Individual conductors in the stripped section of the cable shall be slack between the clamping point and terminal block.
10. Terminate field wiring and cable not directly connected to instruments and control devices having integral wiring terminals using terminal blocks.
11. Install signal transmission components according to IEEE C2, REA Form 511a, NFPA 70, and as indicated.
12. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminal boards. Do not bend flexible coaxial cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.
13. Ground wire shall be copper and grounding methods shall comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.
14. Wire and cable shall be continuous from terminal to terminal without splices.
15. Use insulated spade lugs for wire and cable connection to screw terminals.
16. Use shielded cable to transmitters.
17. Use shielded cable to temperature sensors.
18. Perform continuity and meager testing on wire and cable after installation.
19. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded wire and cable. Remove and discard wire and cable if damaged during installation, and replace it with new cable.
20. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
21. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
22. Protection from Electro-Magnetic Interference (EMI): Provide installation free of (EMI). As a minimum, comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA 569-C for separating unshielded cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
 - b. Separation between open cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:

- 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
 - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
 - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (610 mm).
- c. Separation between cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
- 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
 - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
 - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
- d. Separation between cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
- 1) Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
 - 2) Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (76 mm).
 - 3) Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
- e. Separation between Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or 5 HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
- f. Separation between Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

H. Cable and Raceway Identification:

1. Label cables at both ends. Labels shall be typed, not handwritten.
2. Mark raceways at each pull box indicating the type and number of cables within.

3.15. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 3. Testing of Pneumatic and Air-Signal Tubing:
 - a. Test for leaks and obstructions.
 - b. Disconnect each pipe and tubing line before a test is performed, and blowout dust, dirt, trash, condensate and other foreign materials with compressed air. Use commercially pure compressed air or nitrogen as distributed in gas.

cylinders. Air from an oil-free compressor with an air dryer is an acceptable alternative for the test.

- c. After foreign matter is expelled and line is free from obstructions, plug far end of tubing run.
- d. Connect a pressure source to near end of run with a needle valve between air supply and tubing run.
- e. Connect a pressure gage accurate to within 0.5 percent of test between the shutoff needle valve and tubing run under test.
- f. For system pressures above 30 psig (207 kPa), apply a pressure of 1.5 times operating pressure. Record pressure in tubing run every 10 minutes for one hour. Allowable drop in pressure in one-hour period shall not exceed 1 psig (6.9 kPa).
- g. For system pressures 30 psig (207 kPa) and below, apply a pressure of 2.0 times operating pressure to piping and tubing run. Record pressure in tubing run every 5 minutes for one hour. Allowable drop in pressure in one-hour period shall not exceed 0.5 psig (3.5 kPa).

C. Testing:

1. Perform pre-installation, in-progress, and final tests, supplemented by additional tests, as necessary.
2. Pre-installation Cable Verification: Verify integrity and serviceability for new cable lengths before installation. This assurance may be provided by using vendor verification documents, testing, or other methods. As a minimum, furnish evidence of verification for cable attenuation and bandwidth parameters.
3. In-Progress Testing: Perform standard tests for correct pair identification and termination during installation to ensure proper installation and cable placement. Perform tests in addition to those specified if there is any reason to question condition of material furnished and installed. Testing accomplished is to be documented by agency conducting tests. Submit test results for Project record.
4. Final Testing: Perform final test of installed system to demonstrate acceptability as installed. Testing shall be performed according to a test plan supplied by DDC system manufacturer. Defective Work or material shall be corrected and retested. As a minimum, final testing for cable system, including spare cable, shall verify conformance of attenuation, length, and bandwidth parameters with performance indicated.
5. Test Equipment: Use a fiber-optic time domain reflectometer for testing of length and optical connectivity.
6. Test Results: Record test results and submit copy of test results for Project record.

3.16. DDC SYSTEM I/O CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests and calibration.
- B. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- C. Check instruments for proper installation on direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact performance.
- D. Check instrument tubing for proper isolation, fittings, slope, dirt legs, drains, material and support.
- E. For pneumatic products, verify that air supply for each product is properly installed.
- F. Control Damper Checkout:

1. Verify that control dampers are installed correctly for flow direction.
2. Verify that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
3. Verify that damper frame attachment is properly secured and sealed.
4. Verify that damper actuator and linkage attachment is secure.
5. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed and connected to correct power source.
6. Verify that damper blade travel is unobstructed.

G. Control Valve Checkout:

1. Verify that control valves are installed correctly for flow direction.
2. Verify that valve body attachment is properly secured and sealed.
3. Verify that valve actuator and linkage attachment is secure.
4. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed and connected to correct power source.
5. Verify that valve ball, disc or plug travel is unobstructed.
6. After piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before insulating and balancing, inspect each valve for leaks. Adjust or replace packing to stop leaks. Replace the valve if leaks persist.

H. Instrument Checkout:

1. Verify that instrument is correctly installed for location, orientation, direction and operating clearances.
2. Verify that attachment is properly secured and sealed.
3. Verify that conduit connections are properly secured and sealed.
4. Verify that wiring is properly labeled with unique identification, correct type and size and is securely attached to proper terminals.
5. Inspect instrument tag against approved submittal.
6. For instruments with tubing connections, verify that tubing attachment is secure and isolation valves have been provided.
7. For flow instruments, verify that recommended upstream and downstream distances have been maintained.
8. For temperature instruments:
 - a. Verify sensing element type and proper material.
 - b. Verify length and insertion.

3.17. DDC SYSTEM I/O ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION AND TESTING:

- A. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with calibration documentation.
- B. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
- C. For each analog instrument, make a three-point test of calibration for both linearity and accuracy.
- D. Equipment and procedures used for calibration shall comply with instrument manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.
- F. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments shall have accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. An installed instrument

with an accuracy of 1 percent shall be checked by an instrument with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.

- G. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by manufacturer.
- H. If after calibration indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance instruments.
- I. Comply with field testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE's Guideline 11, "Field Testing of HVAC Control Components," in the absence of specific requirements, and to supplement requirements indicated.
- J. Analog Signals:
 - 1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
 - 2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
 - 3. Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of operating span using a precision-resistant source.
- K. Digital Signals:
 - 1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
 - 2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.
- L. Control Dampers:
 - 1. Stroke and adjust control dampers following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open.
 - 2. Stroke control dampers with pilot positioners. Adjust damper and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so damper is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed and 100 percent open at proper air pressure.
 - 3. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time less than 30 seconds.
 - 4. For control dampers equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.
- M. Control Valves:
 - 1. Stroke and adjust control valves following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open.
 - 2. Stroke control valves with pilot positioners. Adjust valve and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so valve is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed and 100 percent open at proper air pressures.
 - 3. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time less than 30 seconds.
 - 4. For control valves equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.
- N. Meters: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
- O. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.

- P. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.
- Q. Transmitters:
 - 1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
 - 2. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistant source.

3.18. DDC SYSTEM CONTROLLER CHECKOUT

- A. Verify power supply.
 - 1. Verify voltage, phase and hertz.
 - 2. Verify that protection from power surges is installed and functioning.
 - 3. Verify that ground fault protection is installed.
 - 4. If applicable, verify if connected to UPS unit.
 - 5. If applicable, verify if connected to a backup power source.
 - 6. If applicable, verify that power conditioning units, transient voltage suppression and high-frequency noise filter units are installed.
- B. Verify that wire and cabling is properly secured to terminals and labeled with unique identification.
- C. Verify that spare I/O capacity is provided.

3.19. DDC CONTROLLER I/O CONTROL LOOP TESTS

- A. Testing:
 - 1. Test every I/O point connected to DDC controller to verify that safety and operating control set points are as indicated and as required to operate controlled system safely and at optimum performance.
 - 2. Test every I/O point throughout its full operating range.
 - 3. Test every control loop to verify operation is stable and accurate.
 - 4. Adjust control loop proportional, integral and derivative settings to achieve optimum performance while complying with performance requirements indicated. Document testing of each control loop's precision and stability via trend logs.
 - 5. Test and adjust every control loop for proper operation according to sequence of operation.
 - 6. Test software and hardware interlocks for proper operation. Correct deficiencies.
 - 7. Operate each analog point at the following:
 - a. Upper quarter of range.
 - b. Lower quarter of range.
 - c. At midpoint of range.
 - 8. Exercise each binary point.
 - 9. For every I/O point in DDC system, read and record each value at operator workstation, at DDC controller and at field instrument simultaneously. Value displayed at operator workstation, at DDC controller and at field instrument shall match.
 - 10. Prepare and submit a report documenting results for each I/O point in DDC system and include in each I/O point a description of corrective measures and adjustments made to achieve desired results.

3.20. DDC SYSTEM VALIDATION TESTS

- A. Perform validation tests before requesting final review of system. Before beginning testing, first submit Pretest Checklist and Test Plan.
- B. After approval of Test Plan, execute all tests and procedures indicated in plan.
- C. After testing is complete, submit completed test checklist.
- D. Pretest Checklist: Submit the following list with items checked off once verified:
 - 1. Detailed explanation for any items that are not completed or verified.
 - 2. Required mechanical installation work is successfully completed and HVAC equipment is working correctly.
 - 3. HVAC equipment motors operate below full-load amperage ratings.
 - 4. Required DDC system components, wiring, and accessories are installed.
 - 5. Installed DDC system architecture matches approved Drawings.
 - 6. Control electric power circuits operate at proper voltage and are free from faults.
 - 7. Required surge protection is installed.
 - 8. DDC system network communications function properly, including uploading and downloading programming changes.
 - 9. Using BACnet protocol analyzer, verify that communications are error free.
 - 10. Each controller's programming is backed up.
 - 11. Equipment, products, tubing, wiring cable and conduits are properly labeled.
 - 12. All I/O points are programmed into controllers.
 - 13. Testing, adjusting and balancing work affecting controls is complete.
 - 14. Dampers and actuators zero and span adjustments are set properly.
 - 15. Each control damper and actuator goes to failed position on loss of power.
 - 16. Valves and actuators zero and span adjustments are set properly.
 - 17. Each control valve and actuator goes to failed position on loss of power.
 - 18. Meter, sensor and transmitter readings are accurate and calibrated.
 - 19. Control loops are tuned for smooth and stable operation.
 - 20. View trend data where applicable.
 - 21. Each controller works properly in standalone mode.
 - 22. Safety controls and devices function properly.
 - 23. Interfaces with fire-alarm system function properly.
 - 24. Electrical interlocks function properly.
 - 25. Operator workstations and other interfaces are delivered, all system and database software is installed, and graphic are created.
 - 26. Record Drawings are completed.
- E. Test Plan:
 - 1. Prepare and submit a validation test plan including test procedures for performance validation tests.
 - 2. Test plan shall address all specified functions of DDC system and sequences of operation.
 - 3. Explain detailed actions and expected results to demonstrate compliance with requirements indicated.
 - 4. Explain method for simulating necessary conditions of operation used to demonstrate performance.
 - 5. Include a test checklist to be used to check and initial that each test has been successfully completed.
 - 6. Submit test plan documentation 10 business days before start of tests.
- F. Validation Test:

1. Verify operating performance of each I/O point in DDC system.
 - a. Verify analog I/O points at operating value.
 - b. Make adjustments to out-of-tolerance I/O points.
 - 1) Identify I/O points for future reference.
 - 2) Simulate abnormal conditions to demonstrate proper function of safety devices.
 - 3) Replace instruments and controllers that cannot maintain performance indicated after adjustments.
 2. Simulate conditions to demonstrate proper sequence of control.
 3. Readjust settings to design values and observe ability of DDC system to establish desired conditions.
 4. After 24 Hours following Initial Validation Test:
 - a. Re-check I/O points that required corrections during initial test.
 - b. Identify I/O points that still require additional correction and make corrections necessary to achieve desired results.
 5. After 24 Hours of Second Validation Test:
 - a. Re-check I/O points that required corrections during second test.
 - b. Continue validation testing until I/O point is normal on two consecutive tests.
 6. Completely check out, calibrate, and test all connected hardware and software to ensure that DDC system performs according to requirements indicated.
 7. After validation testing is complete, prepare and submit a report indicating all I/O points that required correction and how many validation re-tests it took to pass. Identify adjustments made for each test and indicate instruments that were replaced.
- G. DDC System Response Time Test:
1. Simulate HLC.
 - a. Heavy load shall be an occurrence of 50 percent of total connected binary COV, one-half of which represent an "alarm" condition, and 50 percent of total connected analog COV, one-half of which represent an "alarm" condition, that are initiated simultaneously on a one-time basis.
 2. Initiate 10 successive occurrences of HLC and measure response time to typical alarms and status changes.
 3. Measure with a timer having at least 0.1-second resolution and 0.01 percent accuracy.
 4. Purpose of test is to demonstrate DDC system, as follows:
 - a. Reaction to COV and alarm conditions during HLC.
 - b. Ability to update DDC system database during HLC.
 5. Passing test is contingent on the following:
 - a. Alarm reporting at printer beginning no more than two seconds after the initiation (time zero) of HLC.
 - b. All alarms, both binary and analog, are reported and printed; none are lost.
 - c. Compliance with response times specified.

6. Prepare and submit a report documenting HLC tested and results of test including time stamp and print out of all alarms.

H. DDC System Network Bandwidth Test:

1. Test network bandwidth usage on all DDC system networks to demonstrate bandwidth usage under DDC system normal operating conditions and under simulated HLC.
2. To pass, none of DDC system networks shall use more than 70 percent of available bandwidth under normal and HLC operation.

3.21. FINAL REVIEW

- A. Submit written request to Engineer when DDC system is ready for final review. Written request shall state the following:
 1. DDC system has been thoroughly inspected for compliance with contract documents and found to be in full compliance.
 2. DDC system has been calibrated, adjusted and tested and found to comply with requirements of operational stability, accuracy, speed and other performance requirements indicated.
 3. DDC system monitoring and control of HVAC systems results in operation according to sequences of operation indicated.
 4. DDC system is complete and ready for final review.
- B. Review by Engineer shall be made after receipt of written request. A field report shall be issued to document observations and deficiencies.
- C. Take prompt action to remedy deficiencies indicated in field report and submit a second written request when all deficiencies have been corrected. Repeat process until no deficiencies are reported.
- D. Should more than two reviews be required, DDC system manufacturer and Installer shall compensate entity performing review for total costs, labor and expenses, associated with third and subsequent reviews. Estimated cost of each review shall be submitted and approved by DDC system manufacturer and Installer before making the review.
- E. Prepare and submit closeout submittals and begin procedures indicated in "Extended Operation Test" Article when no deficiencies are reported.
- F. A part of DDC system final review shall include a demonstration to parties participating in final review.
 1. Provide staff familiar with DDC system installed to demonstrate operation of DDC system during final review.
 2. Provide testing equipment to demonstrate accuracy and other performance requirements of DDC system that is requested by reviewers during final review.
 3. Demonstration shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
 - a. Accuracy and calibration of 10 I/O points randomly selected by reviewers. If review finds that some I/O points are not properly calibrated and not satisfying performance requirements indicated, additional I/O points may be selected by reviewers until total I/O points being reviewed that satisfy requirements equals quantity indicated.

- b. HVAC equipment and system hardwired and software safeties and life-safety functions are operating according to sequence of operation. Up to 10 I/O points shall be randomly selected by reviewers. Additional I/O points may be selected by reviewers to discover problems with operation.
- c. Correct sequence of operation after electrical power interruption and resumption after electrical power is restored for randomly selected HVAC systems.
- d. Operation of randomly selected dampers and valves in normal-on, normal-off and failed positions.
- e. Reporting of alarm conditions for randomly selected alarms, including different classes of alarms, to ensure that alarms are properly received by operators and operator workstations.
- f. Trends, summaries, logs and reports set-up for Project.
- g. For up to three HVAC systems randomly selected by reviewers, use graph trends to show that sequence of operation is executed in correct manner and that HVAC systems operate properly through complete sequence of operation including different modes of operations indicated. Show that control loops are stable and operating at set points and respond to changes in set point of 20 percent or more.
- h. Software's ability to communicate with controllers, operator workstations, uploading and downloading of control programs.
- i. Software's ability to edit control programs off-line.
- j. Data entry to show Project-specific customizing capability including parameter changes.
- k. Step through penetration tree, display all graphics, demonstrate dynamic update, and direct access to graphics.
- l. Execution of digital and analog commands in graphic mode.
- m. Spreadsheet and curve plot software and its integration with database.
- n. Online user guide and help functions.
- o. Multitasking by showing different operations occurring simultaneously on four quadrants of split screen.
- p. System speed of response compared to requirements indicated.
- q. For Each Network and Programmable Application Controller:
 - 1) Memory: Programmed data, parameters, trend and alarm history collected during normal operation is not lost during power failure.
 - 2) Operator Interface: Ability to connect directly to each type of digital controller with a portable operator workstation and PDA. Show that maintenance personnel interface tools perform as indicated in manufacturer's technical literature.
 - 3) Standalone Ability: Demonstrate that controllers provide stable and reliable standalone operation using default values or other method for values normally read over network.
 - 4) Electric Power: Ability to disconnect any controller safely from its power source.
 - 5) Wiring Labels: Match control drawings.
 - 6) Network Communication: Ability to locate a controller's location on network and communication architecture matches Shop Drawings.
 - 7) Nameplates and Tags: Accurate and permanently attached to control panel doors, instrument, actuators and devices.
- r. For Each Operator Workstation:
 - 1) I/O points lists agree with naming conventions.
 - 2) Graphics are complete.
 - 3) UPS unit, if applicable, operates.

3.22. EXTENDED OPERATION TEST

- A. Extended operation test is intended to simulate normal operation of DDC system by Owner.
- B. Operate DDC system for an operating period of 28 consecutive calendar days following Substantial Completion. Coordinate exact start date of testing with Owner.
- C. Provide an operator familiar with DDC system installed to man an operator workstation while on-site during eight hours of each normal business day occurring during operating period.
- D. During operating period, DDC system shall demonstrate correct operation and accuracy of monitored and controlled points as well as operation capabilities of sequences, logs, trends, reports, specialized control algorithms, diagnostics, and other software indicated.
 - 1. Correct defects of hardware and software when it occurs.
- E. Definition of Failures and Downtime during Operating Period:
 - 1. Failed I/O point constituting downtime is an I/O point failing to perform its intended function consistently and a point physically failed due to hardware and software.
 - 2. Downtime is when any I/O point in DDC system is unable to fulfill its' required function.
 - 3. Downtime shall be calculated as elapsed time between a detected point failure as confirmed by an operator and time point is restored to service.
 - 4. Maximum time interval allowed between DDC system detection of failure occurrence and operator confirmation shall be 0.5 hours.
 - 5. Downtime shall be logged in hours to nearest 0.1 hour.
 - 6. Power outages shall not count as downtime, but shall suspend test hours unless systems are provided with UPS and served through a backup power source.
 - 7. Hardware or software failures caused by power outages shall count as downtime.
- F. During operating period, log downtime and operational problems are encountered.
 - 1. Identify source of problem.
 - 2. Provide written description of corrective action taken.
 - 3. Record duration of downtime.
 - 4. Maintain log showing the following:
 - a. Time of occurrence.
 - b. Description of each occurrence and pertinent written comments for reviewer to understand scope and extent of occurrence.
 - c. Downtime for each failed I/O point.
 - d. Running total of downtime and total time of I/O point after each problem has been restored.
 - 5. Log shall be available to Owner for review at any time.

3.23. ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.24. MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 24 months' full maintenance by DDC system manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include annual preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, cleaning, calibration and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3.25. SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two year(s).
- B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule and access system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.26. DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative with complete knowledge of Project-specific system installed to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain DDC system.
- B. Extent of Training:
1. Base extent of training on scope and complexity of DDC system indicated and training requirements indicated. Provide extent of training required to satisfy requirements indicated even if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
2. Inform Owner of anticipated training requirements if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
3. Minimum Training Requirements:
- a. Provide not less than five days of training total.
- b. Stagger training over multiple training classes to accommodate Owner's requirements. All training shall occur before end of warranty period.
- c. Total days of training shall be broken into not more than four separate training classes.
- d. Each training class shall be not less than one consecutive day(s).
- C. Training Schedule:
1. Schedule training with Owner 20 business days before expected Substantial Completion.
2. Training shall occur within normal business hours at a mutually agreed on time. Unless otherwise agreed to, training shall occur Monday through Friday, except on U.S. Federal holidays, with two morning sessions and two afternoon sessions. Each morning session and afternoon session shall be split in half with 15 minute break between sessions. Morning and afternoon sessions shall be separated by 30-minute lunch period. Training, including breaks and excluding lunch period, shall not exceed eight hours per day.

3. Provide staggered training schedule as requested by Owner.

D. Training Attendee List and Sign-in Sheet:

1. Request from Owner in advance of training a proposed attendee list with name, phone number and e-mail address.
2. Provide a preprinted sign-in sheet for each training session with proposed attendees listed and no fewer than six blank spaces to add additional attendees.
3. Preprinted sign-in sheet shall include training session number, date and time, instructor name, phone number and e-mail address, and brief description of content to be covered during session. List attendees with columns for name, phone number, e-mail address and a column for attendee signature or initials.
4. Circulate sign-in sheet at beginning of each session and solicit attendees to sign or initial in applicable location.
5. At end of each training day, send Owner an e-mail with an attachment of scanned copy (PDF) of circulated sign-in sheet for each session.

E. Attendee Training Manuals:

1. Provide each attendee with a color hard copy of all training materials and visual presentations.
2. Hard-copy materials shall be organized in a three-ring binder with table of contents and individual divider tabs marked for each logical grouping of subject matter. Organize material to provide space for attendees to take handwritten notes within training manuals.
3. In addition to hard-copy materials included in training manual, provide each binder with a sleeve or pocket that includes a DVD or flash drive with PDF copy of all hard-copy materials.

F. Instructor Requirements:

1. One or multiple qualified instructors, as required, to provide training.
2. Instructors shall have not less than five years of providing instructional training on not less than five past projects with similar DDC system scope and complexity to DDC system installed.

G. Organization of Training Sessions:

1. Organize training sessions into logical groupings of technical content and to reflect different levels of operators having access to system. Plan training sessions to accommodate the following three levels of operators:
 - a. Daily operators.
 - b. Advanced operators.
 - c. System managers and administrators.
2. Plan and organize training sessions to group training content to protect DDC system security. Some attendees may be restricted to some training sessions that cover restricted content for purposes of maintaining DDC system security.

H. On-Site Training:

1. Owner will provide conditioned classroom or workspace with ample desks or tables, chairs, power and data connectivity for instructor and each attendee.

2. Instructor shall provide training materials, projector and other audiovisual equipment used in training.
3. Provide as much of training located on-site as deemed feasible and practical by Owner.
4. On-site training shall include regular walk-through tours, as required, to observe each unique product type installed with hands-on review of operation, calibration and service requirements.
5. Operator workstation provided with DDC system shall be used in training. If operator workstation is not indicated, provide a temporary workstation to convey training content.

I. Training Content for Daily Operators:

1. Basic operation of system.
2. Understanding DDC system architecture and configuration.
3. Understanding each unique product type installed including performance and service requirements for each.
4. Understanding operation of each system and equipment controlled by DDC system including sequences of operation, each unique control algorithm and each unique optimization routine.
5. Operating operator workstations, printers and other peripherals.
6. Logging on and off system.
7. Accessing graphics, reports and alarms.
8. Adjusting and changing set points and time schedules.
9. Recognizing DDC system malfunctions.
10. Understanding content of operation and maintenance manuals including control drawings.
11. Understanding physical location and placement of DDC controllers and I/O hardware.
12. Accessing data from DDC controllers.
13. Operating portable operator workstations.
14. Review of DDC testing results to establish basic understanding of DDC system operating performance and HVAC system limitations as of Substantial Completion.
15. Running each specified report and log.
16. Displaying and demonstrating each data entry to show Project-specific customizing capability. Demonstrating parameter changes.
17. Stepping through graphics penetration tree, displaying all graphics, demonstrating dynamic updating, and direct access to graphics.
18. Executing digital and analog commands in graphic mode.
19. Demonstrating control loop precision and stability via trend logs of I/O for not less than 10 percent of I/O installed.
20. Demonstrating DDC system performance through trend logs and command tracing.
21. Demonstrating scan, update, and alarm responsiveness.
22. Demonstrating spreadsheet and curve plot software, and its integration with database.
23. Demonstrating on-line user guide, and help function and mail facility.
24. Demonstrating multitasking by showing dynamic curve plot, and graphic construction operating simultaneously via split screen.
25. Demonstrating the following for HVAC systems and equipment controlled by DDC system:
 - a. Operation of HVAC equipment in normal-off, -on and failed conditions while observing individual equipment, dampers and valves for correct position under each condition.
 - b. For HVAC equipment with factory-installed software, show that integration into DDC system is able to communicate with DDC controllers or gateways, as applicable.

- c. Using graphed trends, show that sequence of operation is executed in correct manner, and HVAC systems operate properly through complete sequence of operation including seasonal change, occupied and unoccupied modes, warm-up and cool-down cycles and other modes of operation indicated.
- d. Hardware interlocks and safeties function properly and DDC system performs correct sequence of operation after electrical power interruption and resumption after power is restored.
- e. Reporting of alarm conditions for each alarm, and confirm that alarms are received at assigned locations, including operator workstations.

J. Video of Training Sessions:

- 1. Provide a digital video and audio recording of each training session. Create a separate recording file for each session.
- 2. Stamp each recording file with training session number, session name and date.
- 3. Provide Owner with two copies of digital files on DVDs or flash drives for later reference and for use in future training.
- 4. Owner retains right to make additional copies for intended training purposes without having to pay royalties.

END 23 0923

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. Section includes control valves and actuators for DDC systems.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 230923 "Direct-Digital Control System for HVAC" control equipment and software, relays, electrical power devices, uninterruptible power supply units, wire, and cable.

1.3. DEFINITIONS

- A. Cv: Design valve coefficient.
- B. DDC: Direct-digital control.
- C. NBR: Nitrile butadiene rubber.
- D. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene
- E. RMS: Root-mean-square value of alternating voltage, which is the square root of the mean value of the square of the voltage values during a complete cycle.

1.4. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:
 - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
 - 3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
 - 4. Installation, operation, and maintenance instructions, including factors affecting performance.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.

2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Include diagrams for pneumatic signal and main air tubing.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Schedule and design calculations for control valves and actuators, including the following:
 - a. Flow at project design and minimum flow conditions.
 - b. Pressure differential drop across valve at project design flow condition.
 - c. Maximum system pressure differential drop (pump close-off pressure) across valve at project minimum flow condition.
 - d. Design and minimum control valve coefficient with corresponding valve position.
 - e. Maximum close-off pressure.
 - f. Leakage flow at maximum system pressure differential.
 - g. Torque required at worst case condition for sizing actuator.
 - h. Actuator selection indicating torque provided.

1.5. INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plan drawings and corresponding product installation details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Control valve installation location shown in relationship to room, duct, pipe, and equipment.
 2. Size and location of wall access panels for control valves installed behind walls.
 3. Size and location of ceiling access panels for control valves installed above inaccessible ceilings.

1.6. CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For control valves to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label products to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code where required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Ground Fault: Products shall not fail due to ground fault condition when suitably grounded.
- D. Environmental Conditions:
1. Provide electric control valve actuators, with protective enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

Electric control valve actuators not available with integral enclosures, complying with requirements indicated, shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures.

- a. Hazardous Locations: Explosion-proof rating for condition.
- E. Determine control valve sizes and flow coefficients by ISA 75.01.01.
- F. Control valve characteristics and range ability shall comply with ISA 75.11.01.
- G. Selection Criteria:
1. Control valves shall be suitable for operation at following conditions:
 - a. Ground Source Water:
 2. Control valve shutoff classifications shall be FCI 70-2, Class IV or better unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Valve pattern, three-way or straight through, shall be as indicated on Drawings.
 4. Modulating straight-through pattern control valves shall have equal percentage flow-throttling characteristics unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Modulating three-way pattern water valves shall have linear flow-throttling characteristics. The total flow through the valve shall remain constant regardless of the valve's position.
 6. Modulating butterfly valves shall have linear or equal percentage flow-throttling characteristics.
 7. Fail positions unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Ground Source Water: Open.
 8. Globe-type control valves shall pass the design flow required with not more than 95 percent of stem lift unless otherwise indicated.
 9. Rotary-type control valves, such as ball and butterfly valves, shall have Cv falling between 65 and 75 degrees of valve full open position and minimum valve Cv between 15 and 25 percent of open position.
 10. Selection shall consider viscosity, flashing, and cavitation corrections.
 11. Valves shall have stable operation throughout full range of operation, from design to minimum Cv.
 12. Minimum Cv shall be calculated at 10 percent of design flow, with a coincident pressure differential equal to the system design pump head.
 13. In water systems, select modulating control valves at terminal equipment for a design Cv based on a pressure drop of 5 psig ((34 kPa)) at design flow unless otherwise indicated.
 14. Two-position control valves shall be line size unless otherwise indicated.
 15. In water systems, use ball- or globe-style control valves for two-position control for valves NPS 2 ((DN 50)) and smaller and butterfly style for valves larger than NPS 2 (DN 50).

2.2. BALL-STYLE CONTROL VALVES

- A. Ball Valves with Single Port and Characterized Disk:
1. Pressure Rating for NPS 1 ((DN 25)) and Smaller: Nominal 600 WOG.
 2. Pressure Rating for NPS 1-1/2 (DN 38) through NPS 2 (DN 50): Nominal 400 WOG.
 3. Close-off Pressure: 200 psig (1379 kPa).
 4. Process Temperature Range: Zero to 212 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 100 deg C).

5. Body and Tail Piece: Cast bronze ASTM B 61, ASTM B 62, ASTM B 584, or forged brass with nickel plating.
6. End Connections: Threaded (NPT) ends.
7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass or bronze.
8. Stem and Stem Extension:
 - a. Material to match ball.
 - b. Blowout-proof design.
 - c. Sleeve or other approved means to allow valve to be opened and closed without damaging the insulation or the vapor barrier seal.
9. Ball Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
10. Stem Seal: Reinforced PTFE packing ring with a threaded packing ring follower to retain the packing ring under design pressure with the linkage removed. Alternative means, such as EPDM O-rings, are acceptable if an equivalent cycle endurance can be demonstrated by testing.
11. Flow Characteristic: Equal percentage.

B. Ball Valves with Two Ports and Characterized Disk:

1. Pressure Rating for NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Nominal 600 WOG.
2. Pressure Rating for NPS 1-1/2 (DN 38) through NPS 2 (DN 50): Nominal 400 WOG.
3. Close-off Pressure: 200 psig (1379 kPa).
4. Process Temperature Range: Zero to 212 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 100 deg C).
5. Body and Tail Piece: Cast bronze ASTM B 61, ASTM B 62, ASTM B 584, or forged brass with nickel plating.
6. End Connections: Threaded (NPT) ends.
7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass or bronze.
8. Stem and Stem Extension:
 - a. Material to match ball.
 - b. Blowout-proof design.
 - c. Sleeve or other approved means to allow valve to be opened and closed without damaging the insulation or the vapor barrier seal.
9. Ball Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
10. Stem Seal: Reinforced PTFE packing ring with a threaded packing ring follower to retain the packing ring under design pressure with the linkage removed. Alternative means, such as EPDM O-rings, are acceptable if an equivalent cycle endurance can be demonstrated by testing.
11. Flow Characteristics for A-Port: Equal percentage.
12. Flow Characteristics for B-Port: Modified for constant common port flow.

C. Ball Valves with Single Port and Segmented Ball:

1. Performance:
 - a. Process Temperature Rating: Minus 20 to plus 450 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 232 deg C).
 - b. ASME B16.34, Class 150.
 - c. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class IV.
 - d. Range-ability: 300 to 1.
 - e. Rotation: Zero to 90 degrees.
 - f. Equal percentage flow characteristic.

2. ASME B16.10 face-to-face dimensions.
3. Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded (NPT) ends.
4. Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) through NPS 6 (DN 150): Flanged ends suitable for mating to ASME B16.5 flanges.
5. Body: Carbon steel.
6. Ball and Shaft: Stainless steel.
7. Shaft and Segmented Ball: Pinned and welded.
8. Ball Seat: Graphite.
9. Packing: PTFE V-rings and graphite packing follower.
10. Replaceable seat, ball, and shaft packing.
11. Label each valve with following:
 - a. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 - b. Body size.
 - c. Flow directional arrow.

D. Ball Valves with Segmented Ball, Three-Way Pattern:

1. Arrangement: Two single-port valves mated to a fabricated tee with interconnecting mechanical linkage.
2. Performance:
 - a. Process Temperature Rating: Minus 20 to plus 450 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 232 deg C).
 - b. ASME B16.34, Class 150.
 - c. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class IV.
 - d. Range-ability: 300 to 1.
 - e. Rotation: Zero to 90 degrees.
 - f. Equal percentage flow characteristic.
3. Face-to-Face Dimensions: ASME B16.10.
4. Valves NPS 3 ((DN 80)) through NPS 6 (DN 150): Flanged ends suitable for mating to ASME B16.5 flanges.
5. Body: Carbon steel.
6. Ball and Shaft: Stainless steel.
7. Shaft and Segmented Ball: Pinned and welded.
8. Ball Seat: Graphite.
9. Packing: PTFE V-rings and graphite packing follower.
10. Replaceable seat, ball, and shaft packing.
11. Label each valve with following:
 - a. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 - b. Body size.
 - c. Flow directional arrow.

E. Ball Valves with Full Ball and Characterized V-Notch:

1. Performance:
 - a. Process Temperature Rating: Minus 20 to plus 500 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 232 deg C).
 - b. ASME B16.34, Class 600 for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; Class 150 for larger than NPS 2 (DN 50).
 - c. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class VI, bi-directional.

- d. Range-ability: Varies from 200 to 1 up to 800 to 1 based on notch pattern of ball.
 - e. Rotation: Zero to 90 degrees.
 - f. Equal percentage flow characteristic.
 - g. Full port.
2. Face-to-Face Dimension: ASME B16.10 long pattern.
 3. Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: ASME B1.20.1 threaded (NPT) ends and three-piece body.
 4. Valves NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) through NPS 12 (DN 300): Flanged ends suitable for mating to ASME B16.5 flanges and two-piece body.
 5. Hole in the stem slot of each ball equalizes pressure between the body cavity and the line media flow.
 6. Replaceable seat, ball, and shaft packing.
 7. Body: Carbon steel.
 8. Ball and Shaft: Stainless steel.
 9. Ball Seat: RPTFE.
 10. Stem Seals for Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Live-loaded, self-adjusting, primary and secondary sealing using Belleville washers.
 - a. Primary Seal: Combination of thrust washer and thrust washer protector.
 - b. Secondary Seal: Adjustable stem packing composed of RPTFE V-rings.
 11. Stem Seals for Valves Larger than NPS 2 (DN 50): Independent packing gland, adjusted without removing mounting hardware or operator, and contoured to uniformly distribute load across packing.
 - a. Primary Seal: Combination of thrust washer and thrust washer protector.
 - b. Secondary Seal: Adjustable stem packing composed of RPTFE V-rings.
 12. Label each valve with following:
 - a. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 - b. Body size.
 - c. Flow directional arrow.
- F. Pressure-Independent Ball Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
1. Performance:
 - a. Pressure Rating: 600 psig (4137 kPa) for NPS 1 (DN 25) and 400 psig (2528 kPa) for NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 38 and DN 50).
 - b. Close-off pressure of 200 psig (1379 kPa).
 - c. Process Temperature Range: Between zero to 212 deg F (minus 18 to plus 100 deg C).
 - d. Range-ability: 100 to 1.
 2. Integral Pressure Regulator: Located upstream of ball to regulate pressure, to maintain a constant pressure differential while operating within a pressure differential range of 5 to 50 psig ((34 to 345 kPa)).
 3. Body: Forged brass, nickel plated, and with threaded ends.
 4. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 5. Stem and Stem Extension: Chrome-plated brass, blowout-proof design.
 6. Stem sleeve or other approved means to allow valve to be opened and closed without damaging field-applied insulation and insulation vapor barrier seal.

7. Ball Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
8. Stem Seal: Reinforced PTFE packing ring stem seal with threaded packing ring follower to retain the packing ring under design pressure with the linkage removed. Alternative means, such as EPDM O-rings, are acceptable if equivalent cycle endurance can be achieved.
9. Flow Characteristic: Equal percentage.

2.3. BUTTERFLY-STYLE CONTROL VALVES

A. Commercial-Grade, Two-Way Butterfly Valves:

1. Performance:
 - a. Bi-directional bubble tight shutoff at 250 psig (1724 kPa).
 - b. Comply with MSS SP-67 or MSS SP-68.
 - c. Rotation: Zero to 90 degrees.
 - d. Linear or modified equal percentage flow characteristic.
2. Body: Cast iron ASTM A 126, Class B, ductile iron ASTM A 536 or cast steel ASTM A 216/A 216M WCB fully lugged, suitable for mating to ASME B16.5 flanges.
3. Disc: 316 stainless steel.
4. Shaft: 316 or 17-4 PH stainless steel.
5. Seat: Reinforced EPDM or reinforced PTFE with retaining ring.
6. Shaft Bushings: Reinforced PTFE or stainless steel.
7. Replaceable seat, disc, and shaft bushings.
8. Corrosion-resistant nameplate indicating:
 - a. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 - b. Body size.
 - c. Body and trim materials.
 - d. Flow arrow.

B. Commercial-Grade, Three-Way Butterfly Valves:

1. Arrangement: Two valves mated to a fabricated tee with interconnecting mechanical linkage.
2. Performance:
 - a. Bi-directional bubble tight shutoff at 250 psig (1724 kPa).
 - b. Comply with MSS SP-67 or MSS SP-68.
 - c. Rotation: Zero to 90 degrees.
 - d. Linear or modified equal percentage flow characteristic.
3. Body: Cast iron ASTM A 126, Class B, ductile iron ASTM A 536 or cast steel ASTM A 216/A 216M WCB fully lugged, suitable for mating to ASME B16.5 flanges.
4. Disc: 316 stainless steel.
5. Shaft: 316 or 17-4 PH stainless steel.
6. Seat: Reinforced EPDM or reinforced PTFE seat with retaining ring.
7. Shaft Bushings: Reinforced PTFE or stainless steel.
8. Replaceable seat, disc, and shaft bushings.
9. Corrosion-resistant nameplate indicating:
 - a. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 - b. Body size.
 - c. Body and trim materials.

- d. Flow arrow.

2.4. GLOBE-STYLE CONTROL VALVES

A. General Globe-Style Valve Requirements:

1. Globe-style control valve body dimensions shall comply with ISA 75.08.01.
2. Construct the valves to be serviceable from the top.
3. For cage guided valves, trim shall be field interchangeable for different valve flow characteristics, such as equal percentage, linear, and quick opening.
4. Reduced trim for one nominal size smaller shall be available for industrial valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and larger.
5. Replaceable seats and plugs.
6. Furnish each control valve with a corrosion-resistant nameplate indicating the following:
 - a. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 - b. Body and trim size.
 - c. Arrow indicating direction of flow.

B. Two-Way Globe Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
2. Globe Style: Single port.
3. Body: Cast bronze or forged brass with ASME B16.5, Class 250 rating.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Bonnet: Screwed.
6. Packing: PTFE V-ring.
7. Plug: Top guided.
8. Plug, Seat, and Stem: Brass or stainless steel.
9. Process Temperature Range: 35 to 248 deg F (2 to 120 deg C).
10. Ambient Operating Temperature: 35 to 150 deg F (2 to 65 deg C).
11. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class IV.
12. Range-ability: 25 to 1.
13. Equal percentage flow characteristic.

C. Three-Way Globe Valves NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:

1. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>
2. Globe Style: Mix flow pattern.
3. Body: Cast bronze or forged brass with ASME B16.5, Class 250 rating.
4. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Bonnet: Screwed.
6. Packing: PTFE V-ring.
7. Plug: Top guided.
8. Plug, Seat, and Stem: Brass or stainless steel.
9. Process Temperature Range: 35 to 248 deg F (2 to 120 deg C).
10. Ambient Operating Temperature: 35 to 150 deg F (2 to 65 deg C).
11. Leakage: FCI 70-2, Class IV.
12. Range-ability: 25 to 1.
13. Linear flow characteristic.

D. Two-Way Globe Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150):

1. Globe Style: Single port.
2. Body: Cast iron complying with ASME B61.1, Class 125.
3. End Connections: Flanged, suitable for mating to ASME B16.5, Class 150 flanges.
4. Bonnet: Bolted.
5. Packing: PTFE cone-ring.
6. Plug: Top or bottom guided.
7. Plug, Seat, and Stem: Brass or stainless steel.
8. Process Temperature Rating: 35 to 281 deg F (2 to 138 deg C).
9. Leakage: 0.1 percent of maximum flow.
10. Range-ability: Varies with valve size between 6 and 10 to 1.
11. Modified linear flow characteristic.

E. Three-Way Globe Valves NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150):

1. Globe Style: Mix flow pattern.
2. Body: Cast iron complying with ASME B61.1, Class 125.
3. End Connections: Flanged suitable for mating to ASME B16.5, Class 150 flanges.
4. Bonnet: Bolted.
5. Packing: PTFE cone-ring.
6. Plug: Top or bottom guided.
7. Plug, Seat, and Stem: Brass or stainless steel.
8. Process Temperature Rating: 35 to 281 deg F (2 to 138 deg C).
9. Leakage: 0.1 percent of maximum flow.
10. Range-ability: Varies with valve size between 6 and 10 to 1.
11. Modified linear flow characteristic.

2.5. ELECTRIC AND ELECTRONIC CONTROL VALVE ACTUATORS

- A. Actuators for Hydronic Control Valves: Capable of closing valve against system pump shutoff head.
- B. Position indicator and graduated scale on each actuator.
- C. Type: Motor operated, with or without gears, electric and electronic.
- D. Voltage: Voltage selection delegated to professional designing control system 24-V ac or 120-V ac.
- E. Deliver torque required for continuous uniform movement of controlled device from limit to limit when operated at rated voltage.
- F. Function properly within a range of 85 to 120 percent of nameplate voltage.
- G. Construction:
 1. For Actuators Less Than 100 W: Fiber or reinforced nylon gears with steel shaft, copper alloy or nylon bearings, and pressed steel enclosures.
 2. For Actuators from 100 to 400 W: Gears ground steel, oil immersed, shaft hardened steel running in bronze, copper alloy or ball bearings. Operator and gear trains shall be totally enclosed in dustproof cast-iron, cast-steel or cast-aluminum housing.
 3. For Actuators Larger Than 400 W: Totally enclosed reversible induction motors with auxiliary hand crank and permanently lubricated bearings.
- H. Field Adjustment:

1. Spring Return Actuators: Easily switchable from fail open to fail closed in the field without replacement.
 2. Gear Type Actuators: External manual adjustment mechanism to allow manual positioning when the actuator is not powered.
- I. Two-Position Actuators: Single direction, spring return or reversing type.
- J. Modulating Actuators:
1. Operation: Capable of stopping at all points across full range, and starting in either direction from any point in range.
 2. Control Input Signal:
 - a. Three Point, Tristate, or Floating Point: Clockwise and counter-clockwise inputs. One input drives actuator to open position and other input drives actuator to close position. No signal of either input remains in last position.
 - b. Proportional: Actuator drives proportional to input signal and modulates throughout its angle of rotation. Suitable for zero- to 10 or 2- to 10-V dc and [4- to 20-mA signals.
 - c. Pulse Width Modulation (PWM): Actuator drives to a specified position according to pulse duration (length) of signal from a dry contact closure, triac sink, or source controller.
 - d. Programmable Multi-Function:
 - 1) Control Input, Position Feedback, and Running Time: Factory or field programmable.
 - 2) Diagnostic: Feedback of hunting or oscillation, mechanical overload, mechanical travel, and mechanical load limit.
 - 3) Service Data: Include, at a minimum, number of hours powered and number of hours in motion.
- K. Position Feedback:
1. Equip two-position actuators with limits switches or other positive means of a position indication signal for remote monitoring of open and close position.
 2. Equip modulating actuators with a position feedback through current or voltage signal for remote monitoring.
 3. Provide a position indicator and graduated scale on each actuator indicating open and closed travel limits.
- L. Fail-Safe:
1. Where indicated, provide actuator to fail to an end position.
 2. Internal spring return mechanism to drive controlled device to an end position (open or close) on loss of power.
 3. Batteries, capacitors, and other non-mechanical forms of fail-safe operation are acceptable only where uniquely indicated.
- M. Integral Overload Protection:
1. Provide against overload throughout the entire operating range in both directions.
 2. Electronic overload, digital rotation sensing circuitry, mechanical end switches, or magnetic clutches are acceptable methods of protection.
- N. Valve Attachment:

1. Unless otherwise required for valve interface, provide an actuator designed to be directly coupled to valve shaft without the need for connecting linkages.
2. Attach actuator to valve drive shaft in a way that ensures maximum transfer of power and torque without slippage.
3. Bolt and set screw method of attachment is acceptable only if provided with at least two points of attachment.

O. Temperature and Humidity:

1. Temperature: Suitable for operating temperature range encountered by application with minimum operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 120 deg F ((minus 29 to plus 49 deg C)).
2. Humidity: Suitable for humidity range encountered by application; minimum operating range shall be from 5 to 95 percent relative humidity, non-condensing.

P. Enclosure:

1. Suitable for ambient conditions encountered by application.
2. NEMA 250, Type 2 for indoor and protected applications.
3. NEMA 250, Type 4 or Type 4X for outdoor and unprotected applications.
4. Provide actuator enclosure with heater and control where required by application.

Q. Stroke Time:

1. Operate valve from fully closed to fully open within 15 seconds.
2. Operate valve from fully open to fully close within 15 seconds.
3. Move valve to failed position within 5 seconds.
4. Select operating speed to be compatible with equipment and system operation.

R. Sound:

1. Spring Return: 62 dBA.
2. Non-Spring Return: 45 dBA.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for valves installed in piping to verify actual locations of piping connections before installation.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2. CONTROL VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Control Valves:

1. Select from valves specified in "Control Valves" Article to achieve performance requirements and characteristics indicated while subjected to full range of system operation encountered.

2. Heat Pumps System, Two-Way Applications Controlled by operation: Ball valves with single port and characterized disk.
3. Radiant Floor Heating System, Three Way, Controlled by Temperature: Ball valves with segmented ball, three-way pattern or Globe-style, three-way valves.

3.3. INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Furnish and install products required to satisfy most stringent requirements indicated.
- B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- C. Properly support instruments, tubing, piping, wiring, and conduits to comply with requirements indicated. Brace all products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment when subjected to a damaging force.
- D. Provide ceiling, floor, roof, and wall openings and sleeves required by installation. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, or cutting, check location first for concealed products that could potentially be damaged. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- E. Firestop penetrations made in fire-rated assemblies and seal penetrations made in acoustically rated assemblies.
- F. Fastening Hardware:
 1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that will cause injury to or mar surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for assembling and tightening nuts.
 2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
 3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.
- G. Install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit calibration and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks. Where ladders are required for Owner's access, confirm unrestricted ladder placement is possible under occupied condition.

3.4. ELECTRIC POWER

- A. Furnish and install electrical power to products requiring electrical connections.
- B. Furnish and install circuit breakers. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers."
- C. Furnish and install power wiring. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- D. Furnish and install raceways. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

3.5. CONTROL VALVES

- A. Install pipe reducers for valves smaller than line size. Position reducers as close to valve as possible but at distance to avoid interference and impact to performance. Install with manufacturer-recommended clearance.

- B. Install flanges or unions to allow drop-in and -out valve installation.
- C. Where indicated, install control valve with three-valve bypass manifold to allow for control valve isolation and removal without interrupting system flow by providing manual throttling valve in bypass pipe.
- D. Install drain valves in piping upstream and downstream of each control valve installed in a three-valve manifold and for each control valve larger than NPS 2 ((DN 50)).
- E. Install pressure temperature taps in piping upstream and downstream of each control valve larger than NPS 1 (DN 25).
- F. Valve Orientation:
 - 1. Where possible, install globe and ball valves installed in horizontal piping with stems upright and not more than 15 degrees off of vertical, not inverted.
 - 2. Install valves in a position to allow full stem movement.
 - 3. Where possible, install butterfly valves that are installed in horizontal piping with stems in horizontal position and with low point of disc opening with direction of flow.
- G. Clearance:
 - 1. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support of valves that cannot be handled by service personnel without hoisting mechanism.
 - 2. Install valves with at least 12 inches (300 mm) of clear space around valve and between valves and adjacent surfaces.
- H. Threaded Valves:
 - 1. Note internal length of threads in valve ends, and proximity of valve internal seat or wall, to determine how far pipe should be threaded into valve.
 - 2. Align threads at point of assembly.
 - 3. Apply thread compound to external pipe threads, except where dry seal threading is specified.
 - 4. Assemble joint, wrench tight. Apply wrench on valve end as pipe is being threaded.
- I. Flanged Valves:
 - 1. Align flange surfaces parallel.
 - 2. Assemble joints by sequencing bolt tightening to make initial contact of flanges and gaskets as flat and parallel as possible. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Tighten bolts gradually and uniformly with a torque wrench.

3.6. CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect electrical devices and components to electrical grounding system. Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.7. IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Each piece of wire, cable, and tubing shall have the same designation at each end for operators to determine continuity at points of connection. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

- B. Install engraved phenolic nameplate with valve identification on valve and on face of ceiling directly below valves concealed above ceilings.

3.8. CLEANING

- A. Remove grease, mastic, adhesives, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels, and other foreign materials from exposed interior and exterior surfaces.
- B. Wash and shine glazing.
- C. Polish glossy surfaces to a clean shine.

3.9. CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Control Valve Checkout:
 - 1. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.
 - 2. Check valves for proper location and accessibility.
 - 3. Check valves for proper installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact performance.
 - 4. For pneumatic products, verify air supply for each product is properly installed.
 - 5. Verify that control valves are installed correctly for flow direction.
 - 6. Verify that valve body attachment is properly secured and sealed.
 - 7. Verify that valve actuator and linkage attachment are secure.
 - 8. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed, and connected to correct power source.
 - 9. Verify that valve ball, disc, and plug travel are unobstructed.
 - 10. After piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before insulating and balancing, inspect each valve for leaks. Adjust or replace packing to stop leaks. Replace the valve if leaks persist.

3.10. ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING

- A. Stroke and adjust control valves following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed back to 100 percent open.
- B. Stroke control valves with pilot positioners. Adjust valve and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so valve is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed, and 100 percent open at proper air pressures.
- C. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time of less than 30 seconds.
- D. For control valves equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

END 23 0923.11

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
 - 2. Piping specialties.
 - 3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
 - 4. Valves.
 - 5. Pressure regulators.
 - 6. Mechanical sleeve seals.

1.3. DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

1.4. PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
 - 1. Piping and Valves: 125 psig (690 kPa) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Service Regulators: 65 psig (450 kPa) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Natural-Gas System Pressure within Buildings: 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) or 1 more than 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) but not more than 1 psig (6.9 kPa)
- C. Delegated Design: Design restraints and anchors for natural-gas piping and equipment, including comprehensive using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

1.5. SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Piping specialties.
 - 2. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
 - 3. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.
 - 4. Dielectric fittings.
 - 5. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 6. Escutcheons.

- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Submit piping material, valves, unions and pipe supports for roof installations.

- C. Welding certificates.

1.6. QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

1.7. DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.
- D. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

1.8. PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for area where Project is located.
- B. Interruption of Existing Natural-Gas Service: Do not interrupt natural-gas service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide purging and startup of natural-gas supply according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of natural-gas service.

1.9. COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Division 8 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
 - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
 - 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.

3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
 - a. Material Group: 1.1.
 - b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
 - c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
 - d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
 - e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.
5. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.
 - a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.
6. Mechanical Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - 1) Dresser Piping Specialties; Division of Dresser, Inc.
 - 2) Smith-Blair, Inc.
 - b. Steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
 - c. Buna-nitrile seals.
 - d. Steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
 - e. Coupling shall be capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
 - f. Steel body couplings installed underground on plastic pipe shall be factory equipped with anode.

2.2. PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 60-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (862 kPa).

B. T-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
2. End Connections: Grooved ends.
3. Strainer Screen: 60-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 750 psig (5170 kPa).

2.3. JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- C. Pro-press fittings. Outdoors only.

2.4. MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.
- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
 - 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig (862 kPa).
 - 2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
 - 4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 - 5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch (25 mm) and smaller.
 - 6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) to NPS 2 (DN 50) shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
 - 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig (862 kPa).
 - 2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
 - 3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 - 4. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
- D. One-Piece, Bronze Ball Valve with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
 - c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
 - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
 - 2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
 - 3. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - 4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
 - 5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
 - 6. Packing: Separate packnut with adjustable-stem packing threaded ends.
 - 7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 - 8. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).

9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- E. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
 - c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
 - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
 2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
 3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
 4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
 5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
 6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
 7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 8. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
 9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- F. Two-Piece, Regular-Port Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
 - c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
 - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
 2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
 3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
 4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
 5. Seats: Reinforced TFE.
 6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
 7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 8. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
 9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- G. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:

- a. Lee Brass Company.
 - b. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
 3. Plug: Bronze.
 4. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 5. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
 6. Pressure Class: 125 psig (862 kPa).
 7. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 8. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

2.5. PRESSURE REGULATORS

A. General Requirements: As noted on Drawings.

1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
3. Elevation compensator.
4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

B. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - a. American Meter Company.
 - b. Eclipse Combustion, Inc.
 - c. Fisher Control Valves and Regulators; Division of Emerson Process Management.
 - d. Invensys.
 - e. Maxitrol Company.
 - f. Richards Industries; Jordan Valve Div.
2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
6. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
7. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
8. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
9. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
10. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
11. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
12. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 2 psig (13.8 kPa).

C. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - a. Canadian Meter Company Inc.
 - b. Eaton Corporation; Controls Div.
 - c. Harper Wyman Co.
 - d. Maxitrol Company.
 - e. SCP, Inc.
2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
7. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
8. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
9. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 2 psig (13.8 kPa).

2.6. DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
 - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - e. Watts Regulator Co.; Division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - f. Wilkins; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
2. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1034 kPa).
3. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials.
4. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.
5. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.

B. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Watts Regulator Co.; Division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - d. Wilkins; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
2. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1034 kPa).
3. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials.
4. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.
5. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.

C. Dielectric-Flange Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
2. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1034 kPa).
3. Companion-flange assembly for field assembly.
4. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or PE bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
5. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.
6. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.

2.7. SLEEVES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

2.8. MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Company (The).
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe and sleeve.
 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one nut and bolt for each sealing element.

2.9. LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches (750 mm) deep; colored yellow.

- B. Label gas piping exposed on roofs with labels approved for outdoor application. Space labels on 25' centers.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2. PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.
- B. Inspect natural-gas piping according to NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- C. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

3.3. OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least 30 inches (750 mm) below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
 - 1. If natural-gas piping is installed less than 36 inches (900 mm) below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.
- C. Install underground, PE, natural-gas piping according to ASTM D 2774.
- D. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:
 - 1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
 - 2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
 - 3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.
- E. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.
 - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches (150 mm) and larger in diameter.
- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

- H. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- I. Install pressure gage upstream and downstream from each service regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Division 15 Section "Meters and Gages."

3.4. INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Install escutcheons at penetrations of interior walls, ceilings, and floors.
 - 1. New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - d. Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: [One-piece or split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - f. Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
- L. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

- M. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- N. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- O. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
 - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm) long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- P. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- Q. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- R. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
 - 1. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
 - 2. In Floors: Install natural-gas piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
 - 3. In Floor Channels: Install natural-gas piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
 - 4. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
 - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.
 - 5. Prohibited Locations:
 - a. Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
 - b. Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.
- S. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- T. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- U. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- V. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.

- W. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- X. Install pressure gage upstream and downstream from each line regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Division 15 Section "Meters and Gages."

3.5. VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.
- B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.
- C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.
- D. Install earthquake valves aboveground outside buildings according to listing.
- E. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

3.6. PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:
 - 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
 - 3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
 - 4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry-seal threading is specified.
 - 5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Welded Joints:
 - 1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
 - 2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
 - 3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.
- E. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.
- F. Flared Joints: Cut tubing with roll cutting tool. Flare tube end with tool to result in flare dimensions complying with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench. Do not over tighten.
 - 1. Pro-press fittings: Comply with manufacturer of fittings and use proper tool for making final connections.

3.7. HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Division 15 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports."
- C. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches (2438 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 - 2. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 108 inches (2743 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): Maximum span, 108 inches (2743 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 - 4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 to DN 90): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
 - 5. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 5/8 inch (15.8 mm).

3.8. CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.
- B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches (1800 mm) of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
- E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

3.9. LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 15 Section "Mechanical Identification" for piping and valve identification.

3.10. PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 9 painting Sections for painting interior and exterior natural-gas piping.
- B. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
 - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel flat.

- d. Color: Safety Yellow
 - C. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.
- 3.11. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to NFPA 54 and the International Fuel Gas Code] and authorities having jurisdiction.
 - C. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
 - D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.12. DEMONSTRATION
- A. Engage a trained service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain earthquake valves.
- 3.13. OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE
- A. Underground natural-gas piping shall be one of the following:
 - 1. PE pipe and fittings joined by heat fusion, or mechanical couplings; service-line risers with tracer wire terminated in an accessible location.
 - B. Aboveground natural-gas piping shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe schedule 40 with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
 - C. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- 3.14. INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG (3.45 kPa)
- A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 3 (DN 75) and smaller shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
- 3.15. ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE
- A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller at service meter shall be one of the following:
 - 1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
 - 2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
 - 3. Bronze plug valve.

- B. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger at service meter shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
 - 2. Bronze plug valve.
 - 3. Cast-iron, non-lubricated plug valve.

- C. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller shall be one of the following:
 - 1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
 - 2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
 - 3. Bronze plug valve.

- D. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
 - 2. Bronze plug valve.

- E. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be one of the following:
 - 1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
 - 2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.

END 23 1123

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:

1. Ground Source-water piping.
2. Makeup-water piping.
3. Air-vent piping.
4. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

1.3. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Plastic pipe and fittings with solvent cement.
2. Pressure-seal fittings.
3. Chemical treatment.

- B. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Design calculations and detailed fabrication and assembly of pipe anchors and alignment guides, hangers and supports for multiple pipes, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure.
2. Locations of pipe anchors and alignment guides and expansion joints and loops.
3. Locations of and details for penetrations, including sleeves and sleeve seals for exterior walls, floors, basement, and foundation walls.
4. Locations of and details for penetration and firestopping for fire- and smoke-rated wall and floor and ceiling assemblies.

1.4. INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Other building services.
3. Structural members.

- B. Qualification Data: For Installer.

- C. Welding certificates.

- D. Field quality-control reports.

- E. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

1.5. QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installers of Pressure-Sealed Joints: Installers shall be certified by pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.

B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

C. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

1. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ground Source-Water Piping: 50 psig at 120 deg F (93 deg C).
2. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig (552 kPa) at 150 deg F (66 deg C).
3. Condensate-Drain Piping: [150 deg F (66 deg C)] <Insert temperature>.
4. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

2.2. COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B).

B. Type K (Type A) in "Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing" Paragraph below is applicable for belowground installations.

C. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A).

D. Grooved, Mechanical-Joint, Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.

1. Grooved-End Copper Fittings: ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M), copper tube or ASTM B 584, bronze casting.
2. Grooved-End-Tube Couplings: Rigid pattern unless otherwise indicated; gasketed fitting. Ductile-iron housing with keys matching pipe and fitting grooves,[prelubricated] EPDM gasket rated for minimum 230 deg F (110 deg C) for use with housing, and steel bolts and nuts.

E. Copper or Bronze Pressure-Seal Fittings:

1. Housing: Copper.
2. O-Rings and Pipe Stops: EPDM.
3. Tools: Manufacturer's special tools.

- 4. Minimum 200-psig (1379-kPa) working-pressure rating at 250 deg F (121 deg C).
- F. Copper, Mechanically Formed Tee Option: For forming T-branch on copper water tube.
- G. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

2.3. STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; welded and seamless, Grade B, and wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- B. Cast-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4; Classes 125 and 250 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- C. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- D. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- E. Cast-Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Classes 25, 125, and 250; raised ground face, and bolt holes spot faced as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- F. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
- G. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
 - 1. Material Group: 1.1.
 - 2. End Connections: Butt welding.
 - 3. Facings: Raised face.
- H. Grooved Mechanical-Joint Fittings and Couplings:
 - 1. Joint Fittings: ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 ductile iron; ASTM A 47/A 47M, Grade 32510 malleable iron; ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F, E, or S, Grade B fabricated steel; or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Grade B steel fittings with grooves or shoulders constructed to accept grooved-end couplings; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Couplings: Ductile- or malleable-iron housing and EPDM or nitrile gasket of central cavity pressure-responsive design; with nuts, bolts, locking pin, locking toggle, or lugs to secure grooved pipe and fittings.
- I. Steel Pressure-Seal Fittings:
 - 1. Housing: Steel.
 - 2. O-Rings and Pipe Stop: EPDM.
 - 3. Tools: Manufacturer's special tool.
 - 4. Minimum 300-psig (2070-kPa) working-pressure rating at 230 deg F (110 deg C).
- J. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

2.4. PLASTIC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. CPVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM F 441/F 441M, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
 - 1. CPVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings, ASTM F 438 for Schedule 40 pipe; ASTM F 439 for Schedule 80 pipe.
- B. PVC Plastic Pipe: ASTM D 1785, with wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
 - 1. PVC Plastic Pipe Fittings: Socket-type pipe fittings; ASTM D 2467 for Schedule 80 pipe.
- C. HDPE SDR-11 piping and fittings with joints completed by fusion method.

2.5. JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for joining copper with copper; or BAg-1, silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.
- F. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- G. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
 - 1. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
 - a. CPVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 490 g/L or less.
 - b. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less.
 - c. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Health Services) "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 - 2. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.

- a. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less.
 - b. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less.
 - c. Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's (formerly, the California Health Services') "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- H. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for fluid to be handled and working temperatures and pressures.

2.6. TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings:

- 1. One-piece fitting with one threaded brass or copper insert and one solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material.

B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions:

- 1. Brass or copper end, solvent-cement-joint end of material and wall thickness to match plastic pipe material, rubber gasket, and threaded union.

2.7. DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:

- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
 - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:

- 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
 - c. Pressure Rating: [125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
 - d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

- 1. Description:
 - a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
 - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.

- e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

2.8. BYPASS CHEMICAL FEEDER

- A. Description: Welded steel construction; 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure; 5-gal. (19-L) capacity; with fill funnel and inlet, outlet, and drain valves.
 - 1. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Ground Source-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller shall be any of the following:
 - 1. Type L (Type B) drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered, brazed or pressure-seal joints.
 - 2. Schedule 40 Grade B, Type 96 steel pipe; Class 125, cast-iron or Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 3. Schedule 80 CPVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
- B. Ground Source-water piping installed belowground and within slabs shall be the following:
 - 1. HDPE SDR 15 and 11 Use the fewest possible joints.
- C. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be either of the following:
 - 1. Type L (Type B), drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
- D. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type L (Type C) drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
- E. Condensate-Drain Piping: Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.
- F. Blowdown-Drain Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which blowdown drain is installed.
- G. Air-Vent Piping:
 - 1. Inlet: Same as service where installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Outlet: Type K (Type A), annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered or flared joints.
- H. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed with metal-to-plastic transition fittings for plastic piping systems according to piping manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2. PIPING INSTALLATIONS

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 (DN 20) ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 (DN 20) threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- M. Install piping at a uniform grade of 0.2 percent upward in direction of flow.
- N. Reduce pipe sizes using eccentric reducer fitting installed with level side up.
- O. Install branch connections to mains using mechanically formed tee fittings in main pipe, with the branch connected to the bottom of the main pipe. For up-feed risers, connect the branch to the top of the main pipe.
- P. Install valves according to Section 230523.11 "Globe Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.13 "Butterfly Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.14 "Check Valves for HVAC Piping," and Section 230523.15 "Gate Valves for HVAC Piping."
- Q. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- R. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- S. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.

- T. Comply with requirements in Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for installation of expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides.
- U. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for identifying piping.
- V. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- W. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.3. DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100) Use dielectric flanges.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.4. HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hanger, support, and anchor devices. Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for seismic restraints.
- C. Install the following pipe attachments:
 - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet (6 m) long.
 - 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer.
 - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer, supported on a trapeze.
 - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
 - 5. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
 - 6. On plastic pipe, install pads or cushions on bearing surfaces to prevent hanger from scratching pipe.
- D. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m).

2. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m).
 3. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m).
 4. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m).
 5. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 11 feet (3.4 m).
 6. NPS 3 (DN 80) and Larger: Maximum span, 12 feet (3.7 m).
- E. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20): Maximum span, 5 feet (1.5 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
 2. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 6 feet (1.8 m); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
 3. NPS 1-1/4 ((DN 32):)Maximum span, 7 feet (2.1 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 4. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 5. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 8 feet (2.4 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 6. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 9 feet (2.7 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 7. NPS 3 (DN 80) and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- F. Plastic Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.
- G. Fiberglass Piping Hanger Spacing: Space hangers according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions for service conditions. Avoid point loading. Space and install hangers with the fewest practical rigid anchor points.
- H. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot (3-m) intervals between floors.

3.5. PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- E. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

- F. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
- G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- H. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
 - 3. PVC Pressure Piping: Join ASTM D 1785 schedule number, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
 - 4. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- I. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.
- J. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with coupling and gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Cut or roll grooves in ends of pipe based on pipe and coupling manufacturer's written instructions for pipe wall thickness. Use grooved-end fittings and rigid, grooved-end-pipe couplings.
- K. Mechanically Formed, Copper-Tube-Outlet Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure, and brazed joints.
- L. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.

3.6. TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- C. Install bypass piping with globe valve around control valve. If parallel control valves are installed, only one bypass is required.
- D. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections. Comply with requirements in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.7. CHEMICAL TREATMENT

- A. Perform an analysis of makeup water to determine type and quantities of chemical treatment needed to keep system free of scale, corrosion, and fouling, and to sustain the following water characteristics:
 - 1. PH: 9.0 to 10.5.
 - 2. "P" Alkalinity: 100 to 500 ppm.
 - 3. Boron: 100 to 200 ppm.
 - 4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maximum of 100 ppm. Revise this value if closed system contains glycol.
 - 5. Corrosion Inhibitor:

- a. Sodium Nitrate: 1000 to 1500 ppm.
 - b. Molybdate: 200 to 300 ppm.
 - c. Chromate: 200 to 300 ppm.
 - d. Sodium Nitrate Plus Molybdate: 100 to 200 ppm each.
 - e. Chromate Plus Molybdate: 50 to 100 ppm each.
6. Soluble Copper: Maximum of 0.20 ppm.
 7. Tolyriazole Copper and Yellow Metal Corrosion Inhibitor: Minimum of 10 ppm.
 8. Total Suspended Solids: Maximum of 10 ppm.
 9. Ammonia: Maximum of 20 ppm.
 10. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maximum of 20 ppm.
 11. Microbiological Limits:
 - a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maximum of 1000 organisms/mL.
 - b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maximum of 100 organisms/mL.
 - c. Nitrate Reducers: 100 organisms/mL.
 - d. Sulfate Reducers: Maximum of zero organisms/mL.
 - e. Iron Bacteria: Maximum of zero organisms/mL.
- B. Install bypass chemical feeders in each hydronic system where indicated.
1. Install in upright position with top of funnel not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) above the floor.
 2. Install feeder in minimum NPS 3/4 (DN 20) bypass line, from main with full-size, full-port, ball valve in the main between bypass connections.
 3. Install NPS 3/4 (DN 20) pipe from chemical feeder drain to nearest equipment drain and include a full-size, full-port, ball valve.
- C. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.
- D. Add initial chemical treatment and maintain water quality in ranges noted above for the first year of operation.
- E. Fill systems that have antifreeze or glycol solutions with the following concentrations:
1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: Minimum of 0 percent propylene glycol.
 2. Ground Source-Water Piping: Minimum of 0 percent propylene glycol.

3.8. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:
1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
 2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
 3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.
 4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.

5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.
- B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:
1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
 2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
 3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
 4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
 5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
 6. Prepare written report of testing.
- C. Perform the following before operating the system:
1. Open manual valves fully.
 2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
 3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
 4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
 5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
 6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
 7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END 23 2113

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. Section includes piping for horizontal and vertical, direct-buried, ground-loop, heat-pump systems.

1.3. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Pipe and fittings.
 - 2. Joining method and equipment.

1.4. INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Borehole backfilling and drilling operations reports.
- C. Dimensioned site layout.
- D. Startup performance results.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. PIPES AND FITTINGS

- A. HDPE Pipe: ASTM D 3035.
- B. Molded PE Fittings: ASTM D 2683 or ASTM D 3261, ASTM F 1055 PE resin, socket, butt-fusion or electro-fusion type, made to match PE pipe dimensions and class.
- C. U-Bend Assembly: Factory fabricated with embossed depth stamp every 24 inches (600 mm) from U-bend.
- D. Ground-Loop, Heat-Pump Piping Minimum Working Pressure: 160 psig (1100 kPa).
- E. Ground-Loop, Heat-Pump Piping Operating Temperature: Between 23 and 104 deg F (minus 5 and plus 40 deg C).

2.2. BOREHOLE BACKFILL

- A. Seal Material: Bentonite clay with thermal conductivity greater than 1.07 Btu/h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.7 W/sq. m x K) according to ASTM D 5334.
- B. Permeability: Not more than 1 nm/s according to ASTM D 5084

3. EXECUTION

3.1. EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, warning tape, and backfilling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.2. HORIZONTAL PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Separate trenches by 18 feet (3 m) minimum unless otherwise indicated. Remove rocks in trenches that could contact pipe.
- B. Backfill
- C. Extend pipe from trench onto bottom of body of water at an elevation that is at least 12 inches (300 mm) below frost line. Seal membrane or impervious liner under body of water after installing piping.
- D. Install HDPE piping in trenches according to ASTM D 2774 or ASTM F 645.
 - 1. Clean HDPE pipe and fittings and make heat-fusion joints according to ASTM D 2657. Minimize number of joints.
- E. Purge, flush, and pressure test piping before backfilling trenches.
- F. Install continuous detectable warning tape for underground piping. Locate tape a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm) directly over piping. Underground warning tapes are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.3. VERTICAL PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install HDPE piping in boreholes according to ASTM D 2774 or ASTM F 645.
 - 1. Clean HDPE pipe and fittings and make heat-fusion joints according to ASTM D 2657. Minimize number of joints.
- B. Purge, flush, and pressure test piping before installing in boreholes and after completed pipe connections for all buried piping.
- C. Completely fill the borehole from bottom to top with thermal enhanced grout material.
- D. Install the header piping 48 inches deep down from finish grade and install the horizontal piping from the header to the boreholes.
- E. Extend the horizontal piping and connect to ground-loop heat-pump piping systems at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.
 - 1. Terminate water-service piping at building valve tree where shown on drawings. Valve tree provided by the mechanical contractor. Terminate ground source well field main piping too valve tree.
- F. Backfill the horizontal piping and header trenches in 12" lifts with compaction meeting 94% in grassing areas and 98% under roadways, parking lots and under the building.

- G. Fill the entire piping loop with water and flush the exterior piping system until all loops have been purged and cleaned of dirt, and debris by operating a flushing pump system with water supply tank and filtration system. See flushing instructions on drawings.
- H. Maintain records of backfilling on-site.
- I. Mark borehole locations, header pipes, and horizontal runs with metallic locator tape as specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Provide GPS coordinates of each borehole and collector main piping. Turn site plan with GPS coordinates displayed for each borehole and all horizontal piping shown.
- J. Seal penetrations through building foundation walls.
- K. Wall sleeves are specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- L. Mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

3.4. CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Provide GPS locations of all zone valve locations and each bore hole location on as built.

3.5. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Piping Tests: Fill piping 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize piping. Use potable water only.
- B. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than 1-1/2 times the pipe working-pressure rating or 300 percent of system design pressure, whichever is more, allowing for static pressure of borehole depth.
 - 1. Increase pressure in 50-psig (345-kPa) increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for 30 minutes. Slowly increase to next test pressure increment and hold for 30 minutes. After testing at maximum test pressure, reduce pressure to 30 psig (207 kPa). Hold for 90 minutes, and measure pressure at 30-minute intervals. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Maintain a minimum pipe velocity of 24 in. /s (610 mm/s) for a minimum of 45 minutes to remove all air.
 - 3. Prepare Maintain a minimum pipe velocity of 10 feet/s for a minimum of 45 minutes to remove all debris from piping.
- C. Submit test and inspection reports to A/E.

END 23 2113.33

DIVISION 23 – MECHANICAL
SECTION 232116 - HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. Section includes special-duty valves and specialties for the following:

1. Ground Source-water piping.
2. Makeup-water piping.
3. Condensate-drain piping.
4. Safety-valve-inlet and -outlet piping.

1.3. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Valves: Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.
2. Air-control devices.
3. Hydronic specialties.

1.4. CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-control devices, hydronic specialties, and special-duty valves to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5. MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

1.6. QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

1. Safety valves and pressure vessels shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. VALVES

- A. Globe, Check, Ball, and Butterfly Valves: Comply with requirements specified in Section 230523.11 "Globe Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.13 "Butterfly Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.14 "Check Valves for HVAC Piping," and Section 230523.15 "Gate Valves for HVAC Piping."

- B. Automatic Temperature-Control Valves, Actuators, and Sensors: Comply with requirements specified in Section 230923.11 "Control Valves."
- C. Plastic Ball Valves:
1. Body: One-, two-, or three-piece CPVC or PVC to match piping.
 2. Ball: Full-port CPVC or PVC to match piping.
 3. Seats: PTFE.
 4. Seals: EPDM.
 5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
 6. Handle Style: Tee shape.
 7. CWP Rating: Equal to piping service.
 8. Maximum Operating Temperature: Equal to piping service.
 9. Comply with MSS SP-122.
- D. Plastic Butterfly Valves:
1. Body: PVC or CPVC to match piping wafer type for installation between flanges.
 2. Disc: EPDM-coated steel.
 3. Seats: PTFE.
 4. Handle Style: Locking lever.
 5. CWP Rating: Equal to piping service.
 6. Maximum Operating Temperature: Equal to piping service.
- E. Plastic Check Valves:
1. Body: One-, two-, or three-piece PVC or CPVC to match piping.
 2. Ends: Socket or flanged.
 3. Seats: PTFE.
 4. Check Style: Swing or ball type.
 5. CWP Rating: Equal to piping service.
 6. Maximum Operating Temperature: Equal to piping service.
- F. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
1. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
 2. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
 3. Plug: Resin.
 4. Seat: PTFE.
 5. End Connections: Threaded or socket.
 6. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
 7. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
 8. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
 9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
- G. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:
1. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
 2. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
 3. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
 4. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
 5. Seat: PTFE.
 6. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
 7. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.

8. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
9. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig (860 kPa).
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

H. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Body: Bronze or brass.
2. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
3. Seat: Brass.
4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
5. Diaphragm: EPT.
6. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
7. Inlet Strainer: <Insert materials>, removable without system shutdown.
8. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
9. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

I. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Body: Bronze or brass.
2. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
3. Seat: Brass.
4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
5. Diaphragm: EPT.
6. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
7. Inlet Strainer: <Insert materials>, removable without system shutdown.
8. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
9. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

J. Automatic Flow-Control Valves:

1. Body: Brass or ferrous metal.
2. Piston and Spring Assembly: Stainless steel, tamper proof, self-cleaning, and removable.
3. Combination Assemblies: Include bronze or brass-alloy ball valve.
4. Identification Tag: Marked with zone identification, valve number, and flow rate.
5. Size: Same as pipe in which installed.
6. Performance: Maintain constant flow, plus or minus 5 percent over system pressure fluctuations.
7. Minimum CWP Rating: 175 psig (1207 kPa).
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 200 deg F (93 deg C).

2.2. AIR-CONTROL DEVICES

A. Manual Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8 (DN 6).
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F (107 deg C).

B. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
2. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
3. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
4. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
5. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4 (DN 8).
6. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).

C. Bladder-Type Expansion Tanks:

1. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig (860-kPa) working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature. Factory test after taps are fabricated and supports installed and are labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
2. Bladder: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
3. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.

D. Tangential-Type Air Separators:

1. Tank: Welded steel; ASME constructed and labeled for 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum working pressure and 375 deg F (191 deg C) maximum operating temperature.
2. Air Collector Tube: Perforated stainless steel, constructed to direct released air into expansion tank.
3. Tangential Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged connections for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
4. Blowdown Connection: Threaded.
5. Size: Match system flow capacity.

E. Air Purgers:

1. Body: Cast iron with internal baffles that slow the water velocity to separate the air from solution and divert it to the vent for quick removal.
2. Maximum Working Pressure: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
3. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

2.3. HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 60-mesh strainer, or perforated stainless-steel basket.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).

B. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

3. Strainer Screen: 60-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
 4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
- C. T-Pattern Strainers:
1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
 2. End Connections: Grooved ends.
 3. Strainer Screen: 60-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
 4. CWP Rating: 750 psig (5170 kPa).
- D. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:
1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
 2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
 3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment.
 4. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
- E. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:
1. Body: Fiber-reinforced rubber body.
 2. End Connections: Steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
 3. Performance: Capable of misalignment.
 4. CWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).
- F. Expansion Fittings: Comply with requirements in Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping." "Section 15124 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping."

3. EXECUTION

3.1. VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.
- B. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves at each branch connection to return main.
- C. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.
- D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- E. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

3.2. HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.
- B. Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only. Install manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.
- C. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purge to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.
- D. Install in-line air separators in pump suction. Install drain valve on air separators NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger.
- E. Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.
- F. Install expansion tanks above the air separator. Install tank fitting in tank bottom and charge tank. Use manual vent for initial fill to establish proper water level in tank.
 - 1. Install tank fittings that are shipped loose.
 - 2. Support tank from floor or structure above with sufficient strength to carry weight of tank, piping connections, fittings, plus tank full of water. Do not overload building components and structural members.
- G. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure that tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

END 23 2116

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Close-coupled, in-line centrifugal pumps.

1.3. DEFINITIONS

- A. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.
- B. EPT: Ethylene propylene terpolymer.

1.4. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of pump. Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each pump.
 - 1. Show pump layout and connections.
 - 2. Include setting drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5. CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6. MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Mechanical Seals: Two mechanical seal(s) for each pump.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. CLOSE-COUPLED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally or vertically.
- B. Pump Construction:
 - 1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gage tapings at inlet and outlet, replaceable bronze wear rings, and threaded companion-flange connections.
 - 2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. For constant-speed pumps, trim impeller to match specified performance.
 - 3. Pump Shaft: Stainless steel.
 - 4. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
 - 5. Seal: Packing seal consisting of stuffing box with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
 - 6. Pump Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings.
- C. Motor: Single speed and rigidly mounted to pump casing.
 - 1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - a. Enclosure: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
 - b. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron.
 - c. Motor Bearings: Permanently lubricated ball bearings.
 - d. Efficiency: Premium efficient.
 - e. NEMA Design:
 - f. Service Factor: 1.5.
- D. Capacities and Characteristics: See Pump Equipment Schedule o Drawings
 - 1. Capacity: <Insert gpm (L/s)>.

2.2. PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

- A. Suction Diffuser:
 - 1. Angle pattern.
 - 2. 175-psig (1204-kPa) pressure rating, ductile-iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting.
 - 3. Bronze startup and bronze or stainless-steel permanent strainers.
 - 4. Bronze or stainless-steel straightening vanes.
 - 5. Drain plug.
 - 6. Factory-fabricated support.

- B. Triple-Duty Valve:
 - 1. Angle or straight pattern.
 - 2. 175-psig (1204-kPa) pressure rating, ductile-iron body, pump-discharge fitting.
 - 3. Drain plug and bronze-fitted shutoff, balancing, and check valve features.
 - 4. Brass gage ports with integral check valve and orifice for flow measurement.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. EXAMINATION

- A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.
- C. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps are to be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2. PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Install pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.
- B. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.
- C. Equipment Mounting: Install in-line pumps with continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers with vertical-limit stop of size required to support weight of in-line pumps.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.3. ALIGNMENT

- A. Perform alignment service.
- B. Comply with requirements in Hydronics Institute standards for alignment of pump and motor shaft. Add shims to the motor feet and bolt motor to base frame. Do not use grout between motor feet and base frame.
- C. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.
- D. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

3.4. CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 232213 "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping" and Section 232216 Steam and Condensate Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to pump, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.
- D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.
- E. Install triple-duty valve on discharge side of pumps.
- F. Install Y-type strainer or suction diffuser and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.
- G. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.
- H. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge or at integral pressure-gage tapping, or install single gage with multiple-input selector valve.
- I. Install check valve and gate or ball valve on each condensate pump unit discharge.
- J. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- K. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5. STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
 - 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
 - 4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
 - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
 - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
 - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
 - 5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
 - 6. Start motor.
 - 7. Open discharge valve slowly.

3.6. DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps.

END 23 2123

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Refrigerant pipes and fittings.
2. Refrigerant piping valves and specialties.
3. Refrigerants.

1.3. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty.

1. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
 - a. Thermostatic expansion valves.
 - b. Solenoid valves.
 - c. Filter dryers.
 - d. Strainers.

- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes; flow capacities; valve arrangements and locations; slopes of horizontal runs; oil traps; double risers; wall and floor penetrations; and equipment connection details.
2. Show piping size and piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
3. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.

1.4. INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5. CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6. QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

- B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.7. PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
 - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig (2068 kPa).
 - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig (3689 kPa).
 - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig (3689 kPa).

2.2. COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32. Use 95-5 tin antimony or alloy HB solder to join copper socket fittings on copper pipe.
- E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- F. Flexible Connectors:
 - 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
 - 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
 - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment in minimum 7-inch- (180-mm-) long assembly.
 - 4. Working Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig (3450 kPa).
 - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

2.3. VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:
 - 1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
 - 2. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
 - 3. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
 - 4. Seat: Nylon.
 - 5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
 - 6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
 - 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).

- B. Packed-Angle Valves:
1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
 2. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
 3. Operator: Rising stem.
 4. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
 5. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
 6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
 7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
 8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
- C. Check Valves:
1. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
 2. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
 3. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
 4. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
 5. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
 6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
 7. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig (3.4 kPa).
 8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
 9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
- D. Service Valves:
1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
 2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
 3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 4. End Connections: Copper spring.
 5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
- E. Solenoid Valves: Comply with AHRI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by a National Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL).
1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
 2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
 3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 4. End Connections: Threaded.
 5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch (16-GRC) conduit adapter, and [24] [115] [208]-V ac coil.
 6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).
- F. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
 2. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 4. End Connections: Threaded.
 5. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
 6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).
- G. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with AHRI 750.

1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
5. Suction Temperature: [40 deg F (4.4 deg C)] <Insert temperature>.
6. Superheat: [Adjustable] [Nonadjustable].
7. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
8. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
9. Working Pressure Rating: [700 psig (4820 kPa)] [450 psig (3100 kPa)] <Insert value>.

H. Straight-Type Strainers:

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).

I. Angle-Type Strainers:

1. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
3. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).

J. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:

1. Body: Forged brass.
2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in parts per million (ppm).
4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).

K. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated [alumina] [charcoal].
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 (DN 8) connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Maximum Pressure Loss: [2 psig (14 kPa)] <Insert value>.
8. Rated Flow: <Insert tons (kW)>.
9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).

2.4. REFRIGERANTS

- A. ASHRAE 34, R-410A:

3. EXECUTION

3.1. PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-410A

- A. Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
- B. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, Type ACR, drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

3.2. VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
- B. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.
- C. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.
- D. Install a full-size, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.
- E. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
- F. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
 - 1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
 - 2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
 - 3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- G. Install safety relief valves where required by 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.
- H. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- I. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for the device being protected:
 - 1. Solenoid valves.
 - 2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
- J. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve and in the suction line at the compressor.
- K. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.

- L. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

3.3. PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection
- L. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- M. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
 - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
 - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
 - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
 - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- N. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- O. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- P. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

- Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- R. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- S. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.4. PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
 - 1. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
 - 2. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

3.5. HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.6. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
 - 2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
 - 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
 - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
 - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
 - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7. SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
 1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
 2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers (67 Pa). If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
 3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig (14 kPa).
 4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.8. ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
 1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
 2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
 4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END 23 2300

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Duct liner.
5. Sealants and gaskets.
6. Hangers and supports.
7. Seismic-restraint devices.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.3. PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

1.4. ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.
3. Seismic-restraint devices.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Fittings.
5. Reinforcement and spacing.

6. Seam and joint construction.
7. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
8. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
9. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
10. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation.

1.5. INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Perimeter moldings.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6. QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
 3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2. SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).
- C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches (1524 mm) in Diameter: Flanged.
- D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches (2286 mm) in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
 - 2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches (1830 mm) in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3. SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60 (Z180).
 - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.
- E. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M) Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
 - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch (6-mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

2.4. DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
 - 1. Liner:
 - a. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
 - 1) Type II, Rigid: 0.23 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.033 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.
 - 2. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
 - 3. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
 - a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

- c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm (12.7 m/s) or where indicated.
- 9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner ducts of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
 - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch (2.4-mm) diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
- 10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.5. SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
 - 1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
 - 2. Tape Width: 3 inches (76 mm).
 - 3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
 - 4. Water resistant.
 - 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 - 6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
 - 7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
 - 8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
 - 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
 - 10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 11. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
 - 1. Application Method: Brush on.
 - 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
 - 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
 - 4. Water resistant.
 - 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 - 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
 - 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
 - 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
 - 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
 2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
 3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
 4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
 5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
 6. Water resistant.
 7. Mold and mildew resistant.
 8. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 9. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.
 10. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
 11. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive or negative.
 12. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
 13. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
 2. Type: S.
 3. Grade: NS.
 4. Class: 25.
 5. Use: O.
 6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg (0.14 L/s per sq. m at 250 Pa) and shall be rated for 10-inch wg (2500-Pa) static-pressure class, positive or negative.
 2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
 3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.6. HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.

- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
 - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
 - 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
 - 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch (25 mm), plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.

- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

3.2. INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3. DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
 - 3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

3.4. HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
 - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
 - 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install

hangers and supports within 24 inches (610 mm) of each elbow and within 48 inches (1200 mm) of each branch intersection.

- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet (5 m).
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- G. Drilling for and Setting Anchors:
 - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcement or embedded items during drilling. Notify the Architect if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid pre-stressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
 - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
 - 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
 - 4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
 - 5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior applications and stainless-steel anchors for applications exposed to weather.

3.5. CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.6. PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

3.7. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
 - 2. Test the following systems:

- a. Supply, return, exhaust and outdoor ducts with a Pressure Class of [2-Inch wg (500 Pa) or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 100 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - 3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
 - 4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
 - 5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
- C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
- 1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
 - 2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
 - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.
- D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.8. DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean new duct system(s) if upon visual inspection or lack of protection applied during construction, contractor shall clean all new ductwork before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
 - 1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
 - 2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
 - 3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
- C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
 - 1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
 - 2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
 - 1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
 - 2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.

3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
4. Coils and related components.
5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.9. START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.10. DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:
1. Underground Ducts: Concrete-encased, galvanized sheet steel and aluminum where noted.
- B. Supply, Return and Outdoor Ducts:
1. Ducts Connected to Heat Pumps:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 12.
 2. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume energy recovery units
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24

- d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round :12
- e. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: [A] [B].
- f. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: [3] [6] [12] <Insert value>.
- g. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: [3] [6] [12] <Insert value>.

C. Exhaust Ducts:

- 1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
 - a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa)
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 12.

D. Intermediate Reinforcement:

- 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel
- 2. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum.

E. Liner:

- 1. Supply and Return Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I or Flexible elastomeric f, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- 2. NOTE: Duct dimensions shown on drawings do not account for duct liner material, add 2" dimension in each axis.

F. Elbow Configuration:

- 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s):
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.

- 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
 3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
 - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
 - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s): 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
 - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches (305 mm) and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
 - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches (356 mm) and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam or Welded.

G. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
 - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
 - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower: 90-degree tap.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s): Conical tap.
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END 23 3113

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Manual volume dampers.
2. Control dampers.
3. Flange connectors.
4. Turning vanes.
5. Duct-mounted access doors.
6. Flexible connectors.
7. Flexible ducts.
8. Duct accessory hardware.

1.3. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.

- B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
 - a. Special fittings.
 - b. Manual volume damper installations.
 - c. Control-damper installations.
 - d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
 - e. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4. CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5. MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to **10** percent of amount installed.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2. MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G60 (Z180).
 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts and finish for exposed ducts.
- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch (6-mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

2.3. MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
 1. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
 2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
 3. Frames:
 - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick stainless steel.
 - b. Mitered and welded corners.
 - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
 4. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch (1.62 mm) thick.

5. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel or Stainless steel.
 6. Bearings:
 - a. Oil-impregnated stainless-steel sleeve.
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
 7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:
1. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
 2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
 3. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
 4. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick aluminum sheet.
 - e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick extruded aluminum.
 5. Blade Axles: Stainless steel.
 6. Bearings:
 - a. Oil-impregnated bronze.
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
 7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
- C. Low-Leakage, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
1. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.
 2. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
 4. Frames:
 - a. Hat shaped.
 - b. 0.094-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick stainless steel.
 - c. Mitered and welded corners.
 - d. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
 5. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Galvanized, roll-formed steel, 0.064 inch (1.62 mm) thick.

6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
7. Bearings:
 - a. Oil-impregnated stainless-steel sleeve.
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
8. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
9. Jamb Seals: Cambered aluminum.
10. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
11. Accessories:
 - a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.

D. Low-Leakage, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.
2. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
4. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick aluminum sheet.
 - d. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick extruded aluminum.
6. Blade Axles: Stainless steel.
7. Bearings:
 - a. Oil-impregnated stainless-steel sleeve.
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
8. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
9. Jamb Seals: Cambered aluminum.
10. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
11. Accessories:
 - a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.

E. Jackshaft:

1. Size: 1-inch (25-mm) diameter.
2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

F. Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch (19-mm) hexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.4. CONTROL DAMPERS

A. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.

B. Frames:

1. Hat shaped.
2. 0.094-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick stainless steel.
3. Mitered and welded corners.

C. Blades:

1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 6 inches (152 mm).
2. Parallel- and opposed-blade design.
3. Aluminum.
4. 0.064 inch (1.62 mm) thick single skin or 0.0747-inch- (1.9-mm-) thick dual skin.
5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene.
6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.

D. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter; stainless steel blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.

1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).

E. Bearings:

1. Oil-impregnated stainless-steel sleeve.
2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

2.5. FLANGE CONNECTORS

A. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.

B. Material: Galvanized steel.

C. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.6. TURNING VANES

A. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vaness and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- D. Vane Construction: Double wall.

2.7. DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2 (7-2M), "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
 1. Door:
 - a. Double wall, rectangular.
 - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
 - c. Vision panel.
 - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch (25-by-25-mm) butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
 - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
 3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
 - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches (300 mm) Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
 - b. Access Doors up to [18 Inches (460 mm)] Square: Continuous and two sash locks.
 - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches (600 by 1200 mm): Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

2.8. DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

- A. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.
- B. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0528-inch (1.3-mm) carbon steel.
- C. Fasteners: Carbon steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.
- D. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F (1093 deg C).
- E. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive or negative.

2.9. FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.

- B. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- C. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 5-3/4 inches (146 mm) wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-) wide, 0.028-inch- (0.7-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- D. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd. (880 g/sq. m).
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch (84 N/mm) in the warp and 360 lbf/inch (63 N/mm) in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
- E. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd. (810 g/sq. m).
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch (93 N/mm) in the warp and 440 lbf/inch (77 N/mm) in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 45 to plus 121 deg C).
- F. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.
 - 1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
 - 2. Outdoor Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 - 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 - 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 - 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 - 6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
 - 7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of 1/4-inch (6-mm) movement at start and stop.

2.10. FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 0, interlocking spiral of aluminum foil; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
 - 1. Pressure Rating: 8-inch wg (2280 Pa) positive or negative.
 - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 5000 fpm (25 m/s).
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 121 deg C).
 - 4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- B. Flexible Duct Connectors:
 - 1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches (75 through 460 mm), to suit duct size.

2.11. DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of Pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install control dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
 - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
 - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
 - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
 - 2. Upstream from duct filters.
 - 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
 - 4. At drain pans and seals.
 - 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
 - 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
 - 7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot (15-m) spacing.
 - 8. Upstream from turning vanes.
 - 9. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
 - 10. Control devices requiring inspection.
 - 11. Elsewhere as indicated.

- H. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- I. Access Door Sizes:
 - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches (200 by 125 mm).
 - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches (300 by 150 mm).
 - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches (460 by 250 mm).
 - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches (530 by 355 mm).
 - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches (635 by 355 mm).
 - 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches (635 by 430 mm).
- J. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- K. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- L. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg (1250 Pa) and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- M. Connect diffusers to ducts directly or with maximum 48-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- N. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- O. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- P. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch (6-mm) movement during start and stop of fans.

3.2. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
 - 2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
 - 3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
 - 4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
 - 5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END 23 3300

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
- 2. Perforated diffusers.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers.

1.3. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
- 2. Diffuser Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

1.4. INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

- 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
- 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
- 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
- 4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
- 5. Duct access panels.

- B. Source quality-control reports.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. RECTANGULAR AND SQUARE CEILING DIFFUSERS

- A. Devices shall be specifically designed for constant volume flows.

- B. Material: Aluminum.

- C. Finish: Baked enamel, white

- D. Face Size: See Air device schedule on drawings.
- E. Face Style: Four cone.
- F. Mounting: T-bar.
- G. Pattern: Fixed or Adjustable as noted.

2.2. PERFORATED DIFFUSERS

- A. Devices shall be specifically designed for constant air-volume flows.
- B. Material: Steel backpan and pattern controllers, with aluminum face.
- C. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
- D. Face Size: See air device schedule on drawings.
- E. Duct Inlet: Round or Square as note on schedule.
- F. Face Style: Flush.
- G. Mounting: T-bar.
- H. Pattern Controller: None.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where diffusers are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2. INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.3. ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END 23 3713.13

DIVISION 23 – MECHANICAL
Section 23 7413 - Packaged Outdoor, Central-Station Air-Handling Units

1. GENERAL

1.1. WORK INCLUDES

- A. Contractor Shall Provide:
 - 1. Packaged DOAS roof top units
 - 2. Unit controls.
 - 3. Vibration Isolation roof curb.

1.2. RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 013300 – Submittals.
- B. Section 230593 – Testing, Adjusting & Balancing for HVAC.
- C. Section 230700 – Mechanical Insulation.
- D. Section 233113 – Metal Ducts.

1.3. REFERENCES

- A. ARI 210 - Unitary Air-Conditioning Equipment.
- B. ARI 270 - Sound Rating of Outdoor Unitary Equipment.
- C. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- D. NFPA 90A - Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilation Systems.

1.4. SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under the provisions of 013300.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate capacity and dimensions of manufactured products and assemblies required for this project. Indicate electrical service with electrical characteristics and connection requirements, and duct connections.
- C. Product Data: Provide capacity and dimensions of manufactured products and assemblies required for this project. Indicate electrical service with electrical characteristics and connection requirements, and duct connections.
- D. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions. Indicate assembly, support details, connection requirements, and include start-up instructions.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include manufacturer's descriptive literature, operating instructions, installation instructions, maintenance and repair data, and parts listing.

1.5. QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years' experience.

1.6. REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified by Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc., as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

1.7. DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect units from physical damage by storing off site until roof mounting curbs are in place, ready for immediate installation of units.

1.8. WARRANTY

- A. Equipment shall be provided with a full one (1) year warranty covering the entire unit. Provide a five (5) year warranty (parts only) for refrigeration compressors. Warranty shall start at the time of substantial completion for the entire project. Equipment installed as part of an early phase shall be provided with an extended warranty, as required, to meet the one (1) year / five (5) year warranty period, effective at the projects substantial completion.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. PACKAGED ROOF TOP UNITS (DOAS-1 thru 3 and RTUs-1 THRU 2)

- A. The basis of design and Base Bid for this project is based on Valent equipment. The contractor shall review the allowances indicated on the drawings in regard to equipment weights, dimensions, electrical requirements, sound levels, etc. The mechanical contractor shall be solely responsible for any additional cost incurred to install rooftop equipment other than the basis of design manufacturer. Additional costs may include but not be limited to the following:

1. Additional structural steel required to accommodate increased roof loading due to changes in rooftop equipment dimensions or weights.
2. Additional screening costs due to increased equipment heights or lengths.
3. Additional electrical installation costs due to increased ampacity and overcurrent protection.
4. Changes to roof drain locations and associated piping due to variations in rooftop equipment dimensions.
5. Additional vibration isolation equipment and installation costs due to elevated sound levels of equipment.

- B. Acceptable Manufacturers:

1. Daikin.
2. Trane.

- C. General Unit Description:

1. Unit shall be packaged rooftop unit as herein specified. Cooling capacity ratings shall be based upon ARI Standard 360. Units shall consist of insulated weather tight casing with compressors, air cooled condenser coil, condenser fans, evaporator coil, gas heating section, filters, supply/exhaust fan motors and drives, and unit controls.
2. Units shall be single piece construction as manufactured at the factory. Package units shall be constructed for installation on a roof curb providing full perimeter support under air handler section.
3. Units shall be factory run tested to include the operation of all fans, compressors, heat exchangers.
4. Units shall have labels, decals, and/or tags to aid in the service of the unit and indicate caution areas.

- C. Unit Construction:

1. Base: Manufacturer's standard base shall be constructed of minimum 10 gage galvanized steel with 16 gage integral floor pan. All floor seams shall have a raised rib joint. Penetrations through the floor shall have a minimum 3/8" raised rib around each opening. Base shall have a minimum 4" overhang over the top of a roof curb to prevent water infiltration.
2. Panels: Manufacturer's standard casing shall be constructed of minimum 2-inch, foam-injected, double-wall panels.
 - a. Individual panels shall be constructed so that there is no metal-to-metal contact between the interior and exterior sheet metal of each panel.
 - b. Interior side of panel shall be 22 gage G-90 galvanized steel. Exterior side of panel shall be 22 gage pre-painted steel rated for 1000 hours of salt spray exposure in accordance with ASTM B117 and ASTM D1654.
 - c. Insulation shall be 2 lb/ft³ injected foam insulation with a minimum R-value of 12. Foam sheet or fiberglass insulation are not acceptable due to reduced durability of panel and increased chance for rust forming between the panels. Insulation water absorption must be no more than 0.038 lb/ft per ASTM D2842 and show "no growth" per ASTM G21 biocide testing. Interior sheet metal shall encase insulation so that it is not exposed to the airstream.
3. Access doors shall be provided for access to all internal components requiring regular maintenance or inspection. Access door construction and materials shall be identical to unit casing. Access doors shall have stainless steel hinges and a minimum of two quarter-turn compression latches with adjustable catches. Access doors shall be sealed with a full-perimeter D-shaped gasket constructed of EPDM sponge rubber.
4. Roof shall be pitched away from access doors and include a minimum ½" overhang around the perimeter of the unit.
5. Outdoor Air Inlet: Outdoor units shall be provided with a factory provided, field-assembled weather hood with ½" aluminum washable filters on the outdoor air inlet. Indoor units shall be provided with duct connections at the outdoor air inlet.
6. Unit shall include lifting eyes on top of unit for use during rigging.
7. Motorized dampers – Outside Air and Return Air
 - a. Frame shall be constructed of a 16 gage galvanized steel hat-channel.
 - b. Blades shall be constructed of 16 gage galvanized steel strengthened by three longitudinal 1 inch deep "vee" grooves.
 - c. Blades shall be symmetrical relative to its axle pivot point.
 - d. Axle bearings shall be synthetic sleeve-type and rotate inside extruded holes in the damper frame.
 - e. Blade seals shall be extruded vinyl permanently bonded to the appropriate blade edges.
 - f. Frame shall include flexible stainless steel compression-type jamb seals.
 - g. Modulating spring-return actuators shall be provided by the factory, installed on the damper, and wired to the control center. Each damper shall have a dedicated actuator. Single actuators with gear trains are not acceptable.
 - h. Damper leakage shall be no more than 3 cfm/sq.ft. at 1 in.wg static pressure.

D. Heat Recovery Device:

1. Provide a total energy recovery wheel – DOAS-1 thru 3.
 - a. Heat Wheel – Aluminum substrate with 3 angstrom molecular sieve desiccant.

- 1.) Energy recovery shall be an integral part of unit from the manufacturer. No field assembly, ducting, or wiring shall be required with the energy recovery option.
- 2.) Energy recovery media shall be accessible through a 2" thick, foam-injected, double-wall, hinged access door with quarter-turn latches.
- 3.) Energy recovery shall be provided through a total enthalpy wheel providing sensible and latent energy transfer per the scheduled performance.
- 4.) Energy recovery wheel media shall be constructed of fluted aluminum with permanently-bonded zeolite desiccant.
- 5.) Energy recovery wheel cassette shall be mounted perpendicular (90°) to the base of the unit.
- 6.) A VFD shall be required to modulate the speed of the wheel and to provide soft start to extend the life of the belt.
- 7.) Wheel bearings shall be selected to provide an L-10 life in excess of 400,000 hours.
- 8.) Rotor media shall be reinforced using aluminum structural spokes with extruded central hub and shaft and shall be connected to shaft using pillow bearings.
- 9.) Energy wheel cassette shall include seals, drive motor, and linked drive belt.
- 10.) Latent energy shall be transferred entirely in the vapor phase with no condensation.
- 11.) The energy recovery cassette and wheel drive motor shall be an Underwriters Laboratories Recognized Component for electrical and fire safety.
- 12.) Thermal performance shall be certified by the wheel manufacturer in accordance with ASHRAE Standard 84, Method of Testing Air-to-Air Heat Exchangers and AHRI Standard 1060, Rating Air-to-Air Energy Recovery Ventilation Equipment.

E. DX Cooling Coil:

1. Coil shall be rated in accordance to AHRI standards, designed to withstand 250 psig working pressure at 300 degrees F, and pressure tested to 600 psig.
2. Coil shall be a minimum of 4 rows deep with maximum fin density of 10 fins per inch.
3. Refrigeration systems with more than one circuit shall have interlaced evaporator coils.
4. Coil casing shall be constructed of 304 stainless steel.
5. Coil tubes shall be constructed of 1/2" diameter, 0.016" thick seamless copper tubing.
6. Coil fins shall be constructed of 0.0060" thick aluminum.
7. Cooling coils shall include corrosion-resistant, electrostatically-applied coating rated for 5,000 hours in accordance with ASTM B117.
8. Drain pan
 - a. Drain pan shall be constructed of a minimum of 18 gage 201 stainless steel.
 - b. Drain pan shall be double-sloped to ensure condensate removal from unit.
 - c. Drain pan shall extend a minimum of 8" past the evaporator coil to ensure condensate retention.
 - d. Drain pan to be fully insulated.

F. Refrigeration – Air Cooled DX:

1. Unit shall be provided with factory piped, charged, and tested packaged air-cooled direct expansion refrigeration system.

2. Refrigeration systems 10 nominal tons and above shall be equipped with two stages of capacity control, each stage on an independent refrigerant circuit.
3. Refrigeration systems 30 nominal tons and above shall be equipped with four stages of capacity control, two stages per independent circuit.
4. Refrigeration system shall be provided with thermal expansion valve (TXV) incorporating adjustable superheat.

G. Compressors:

1. Compressors shall be hermetic scroll type and include the following items:
 - a. Suction and discharge service valves.
 - b. Suction and discharge isolation valves.
 - c. Reverse rotation protection.
 - d. Oil level adjustment.
 - e. Oil filter.
 - f. Filter drier
 - g. Short cycling control.
 - h. High and low pressure limits.
 - i. Crankcase heaters.
2. Compressors shall be installed in a separate compartment, above the unit floor, and isolated from the surrounding environment by double wall foam injected panels and access doors.
3. Compressors shall be installed using manufacturer's recommended rubber vibration isolators.
4. Capacity control shall be provided through the use of a single Digital Scroll™ compressor. Additional compressors, if required, shall be fixed stage scroll compressors.

H. Hot Gas Reheat:

1. Hot-gas reheat coil shall be separated from the evaporator coil by a minimum of 6" in the direction of airflow to prevent the re-evaporation of condensate, provide room for coil cleaning, and allow control system to monitor evaporator coil leaving dew point temperature.
2. Coil shall be rated in accordance to AHRI standards, designed to withstand 250 psig working pressure at 300 degrees F, and pressure tested to 600 psig.
3. Coil casing shall be constructed of 16 gage galvanized steel.
4. Coil tubes shall be constructed of 5/16" diameter, 0.012" thick seamless copper tubing.
5. Coil fins shall be constructed of 0.0060" thick aluminum fins.
6. Hot-gas reheat shall be controlled through a factory-supplied and controlled modulating 3-way valve.

I. Air Cooled Condenser:

1. Air cooled condenser coil shall be unit mounted.
2. Provide condenser coils with galvanized casing, seamless copper tubes, and aluminum fins.
3. Coil shall be rated in accordance to AHRI standards, designed to withstand 250 psig working pressure at 300 degrees F, and pressure tested to 600 psig.
4. Coil casing shall be constructed of 16 gage galvanized steel.
5. Coil tubes shall be constructed of 5/16" diameter, 0.012" thick seamless copper tubing.
6. Coil fins shall be constructed of 0.0060" thick aluminum fins.

7. Condenser coils shall be mounted at a minimum 30 degree angle from vertical to help prevent hail damage.
 8. Condenser coils shall include corrosion-resistant, electrostatically-applied coating rated for 5,000 hours in accordance with ASTM B117.
 9. Condenser coils shall include factory provided and installed condenser coil guards.
- J. Condensing Fans – Low ambient:
1. Condensing section shall be equipped with 1140 rpm direct-drive condensing fans.
 2. Condensing fan assembly shall be statically and dynamically balanced in accordance with AMCA Standard 204-05.
 3. Condensing fan assembly shall consist of aluminum-bladed propeller fan wheel, formed-channel base, formed inlet venturi, and coated steel basket guard on the discharge.
 4. A factory-supplied variable frequency drive shall be provided to modulate a single condensing fan to maintain refrigerant pressure in the condensing section.
 5. All additional condensing fans shall enable/disable to maintain refrigerant pressure in the condensing section.
- K. Gas Heating:
1. Unit shall be provided with AGA-certified, forced-draft, 10:1 turndown indirect gas furnace. (DOAS-1 thru 3 and RTUs-1 AND 2).
 2. Furnace assembly shall include the following items:
 - a. Electronic modulating gas valve.
 - b. Two-speed combustion fan.
 - c. 409 stainless steel heat exchanger.
- L. Filters:
1. Outdoor air intake hood filters
 - a. Filter rack shall accommodate 2" media.
 - b. Manufacturer shall provide 1 set of 1" aluminum filter media.
 - c. Filter sections shall be accessible from outside the unit and located in the outdoor air intake hood.
 2. Outdoor air filters
 - a. Outdoor air filter rack shall accommodate factory-provided 2" aluminum filters.
 - b. Filter sections shall be accessible through a 2" foam-injected, double-wall, hinged access door with quarter-turn latches.
 3. Return air filters
 - a. Return air filter rack shall accommodate factory-provided 2" MERV8 filters.
 - b. Filter sections shall be accessible through a 2" thick, foam-injected, double-wall, hinged access door with quarter-turn latches.
 4. Supply air filters
 - a. Supply air filter rack shall accommodate factory-provided 2" MERV 8 filters.
 - b. Filter sections shall be accessible through a 2" thick, foam-injected, double-wall, hinged access door with quarter-turn latches.
 - c. Filter section shall include dirty filter pressure switch.
- M. Direct Drive Supply and Exhaust Airflow Blowers:

1. Fan assemblies shall be direct-drive without the use of belts or adjustable sheaves.
2. A variable frequency drive (VFD) shall be provided for each fan section. VFD shall be mounted, wired, and programmed by the equipment manufacturer. VFD shall be located in an enclosed compartment outside of the supply or exhaust air stream.
3. Fan wheels shall be constructed of welded aluminum with airfoil blades.
4. Fan wheel shall be tested in accordance to AMCA 210. Fan speed shall not exceed 2400 RPM.
5. Fans may be full width or partial width. Fans modified to partial width through the use of banding or other blade reduction method are not acceptable.
6. Fans shall be mounted on minimum 1" tall neoprene isolators.
7. Fan motor shall be VFD rated, ODP type, EPACT compliant, and shall be of premium efficiency (PE).

O. Electrical:

1. Unit shall be constructed with an integral electrical and control center isolated from supply airflow, exhaust airflow, compressors, and heating elements. The control center shall control all aspects of the unit operation. VFDs with overload protection shall be provided for each fan bank.
2. Units shall be wired according to NEC and listed per ETL. ETL listing shall cover all components of the ventilator and not be limited to the control panel. All major electrical components shall be UL or ETL listed.
3. DOAS-1 and 2 shall have a single point of connection with integral unit mounted disconnect. Panel shall have an SCCR rating of 65 kV.
4. Units shall be factory wired with a single point power connection.
5. Unit shall be provided with phase and brown out protection which shuts down all motors in the unit if the electrical phases are more than 7% out of balance on voltage, the voltage is more than 7% under design voltage, or on phase reversal.
6. The following items shall be provided and wired within the control center by the factory:
 - a. Non-fused disconnect.
 - b. Sub-circuit fusing.
 - c. Low voltage transformers.
 - d. Controls as specified in this section.
 - e. Control circuit fusing.
 - f. Terminal block.
 - g. Supply and Exhaust Fan motor Variable Frequency Drives (VFDs).
7. Electrical panel must house all high voltage components such as terminal blocks, variable frequency drives, and fuse blocks.
8. All electrical power and controls wiring shall run in chase located between unit ceiling and roof to minimize interior wall penetrations and allow for ease of access.
9. Options
 - a. Control panel shall include a factory supplied and mounted 115V GFCI convenience outlet receptacle with a 12A circuit breaker. Outlet shall be powered by the main power.
 - b. Unit shall include a factory supplied, mounted, and wired electric heating element in the control panel to maintain a minimum of 0F in the panel.

D. DDC Microprocessor Controls:

1. General: Each unit shall be provided with a factory-installed, programmed and run-tested, stand-alone, microprocessor control system suitable for VAV control as required. This system shall consist of temperature and pressure (thermistor and transducer) sensors, printed circuit boards, and a unit-mounted Interface Panel. The microprocessor shall be equipped with on-board diagnostics to indicate that all hardware, software, and all interconnected wiring and sensors are in proper operating condition. The microprocessor's memory shall be non-volatile EEPROM type, thus requiring no battery or capacitive backup to maintain all data during a power loss.
2. Anti-recycle Protection - shall be provided to prevent excessive cycling, and premature wear, of the compressors, contactors and related components.
3. Airflow modulation shall be provided by either a variable frequency drive with bypass that is factory-mounted, completely wired, and functionally tested or ECM fan motors. Adjustable frequency inverter drive shall safely vary the speed of the fan motor allowing the motor to meet the dynamic requirements at the shaft of the motor and meet the system static. Properly sized motor protection shall be provided in both drive and bypass modes by a motor overload relay and fuses. Inverter controller shall have a display that provides readout functions that include: output frequency, output voltage, output current, output power, DC bus voltage, interface terminal status, and fault status. In the bypass mode, an output signal shall be available for a building automation system to make system adjustments to prepare for an across the line start of a fully loaded fan. A run command signal to the bypass motor starter shall be provided by the unit controller.

E. Accessories:

1. Disconnect switch (factory wired).
2. GFI convenience outlet (factory wired).
3. Insulated Vibration isolation roof curb. Coordinate vibration isolation roof curb requirements with Architectural plans.

2.2. SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Sound Power Level Ratings: Comply with ARI 270, "Standard for Sound Rating of Outdoor Unitary Equipment."

3. EXECUTION

3.1. EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of RTUs and DOAS's.
- B. Examine roughing-in for RTUs and DOAS's to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where RTUs and DOAS's will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2. INSTALLATION

- A. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure, level and secure, according to NRCA's "Low-Slope Membrane Roofing Construction Details Manual", Illustration "Raised Curb Detail for Rooftop Air Handling Units and Ducts". Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction specified in Division 7 Section "Roof Accessories." Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing or concrete base with anchor bolts.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install condensate drain, minimum connection size, with trap and indirect connection to nearest roof drain or area drain.
- B. Install piping adjacent to RTUs to allow service and maintenance.
 - 1. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 23 Section "Fuel Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.
- C. Duct installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
 - 1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
 - 2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
 - 3. Connect supply ducts to RTU with flexible duct connectors specified in Division 23 Section "Duct Accessories."
 - 4. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, startup and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing. Report results in writing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory representative to perform system start-up.

3.6 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTU's and DOAS's units and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filters.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs.

END 23 7413

DIVISION 23 - MECHANICAL
SECTION 23 8146 - WATER-SOURCE UNITARY HEAT PUMPS

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2. SUMMARY

- A. Section includes unitary heat pumps with refrigerant-to-water heat exchangers, refrigeration circuits, and refrigerant compressor(s).

1.3. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each water-source unitary heat pump.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4. INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For water-source unitary heat pumps, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of water-source unitary heat pump, signed by product manufacturer.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

1.5. CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For water-source unitary heat pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6. MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. **One** spare heat-pump unit(s) of each size and model furnished.

1.7. WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of water-source unitary heat pumps that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, refrigeration components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. ASHRAE Compliance:
 - 1. ASHRAE 15.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with safety requirements in UL 484 for assembly of free-delivery, water-source heat pumps.

2.2. WATER-SOURCE UNITARY HEAT PUMPS, 6 TONS (21 kW) AND SMALLER

- A. See equipment schedule on drawings for manufacturers and capacities
- B. Description: Packaged water-source unitary heat pump with temperature controls; factory assembled, piped, wired, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE/ARI/ISO-13256-1.
 - 1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Cabinet and Chassis: Galvanized-steel casing with the following features:
 - 1. Access panel for access and maintenance of internal components.
 - 2. Knockouts for electrical and piping connections.
 - 3. Cabinet Insulation: Glass-fiber liner, minimum 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick, complying with UL 181, ASTM C 1071, and ASTM G 21.
- D. Water Circuits:
 - 1. Refrigerant-to-Water Heat Exchangers:

- a. Source-side coaxial heat exchangers with copper water tube, with enhanced heat-transfer surfaces inside a steel shell; both shell and tube are leak tested to 450 psig (3102 kPa) on refrigerant side and 400 psig (2758 kPa) on water side.
 - b. Load-side coaxial heat exchangers with copper water tube, with enhanced heat-transfer surfaces inside a steel shell; both shell and tube are leak tested to 450 psig (3102 kPa) on refrigerant side and 400 psig (2758 kPa) on water side.
 - c. Stainless-steel, brazed-plate heat exchanger is leak tested to 450 psig (3102 kPa) on refrigerant side and 400 psig (2758 kPa) on water side. Factory mount heat exchanger in unit on resilient rubber vibration isolators.
 - d. Hot-water generator, vented double wall copper tube with enhanced heat-transfer surfaces inside a steel shell; both shell and tube are leak tested to 450 psig (3102 kPa) on refrigerant side and 400 psig (2758 kPa) on water side, pump, circuit breaker, high water temperature and low water refrigerant cutoffs, and tank connection.
- E. Refrigerant Circuit Components:
1. Sealed Refrigerant Circuit: Charge with R-410A refrigerant.
 2. Filter-Dryer: Factory installed to clean and dehydrate the refrigerant circuit.
 3. Charging Connections: Service fittings on suction and liquid for charging and testing on each circuit.
 4. Reversing Valve: Four-way, solenoid-activated valve designed to be fail-safe in heating position with replaceable magnetic coil.
 5. Compressor:
 - a. Scroll.
 - b. Single stage.
 - c. Installed on vibration isolators and mounted on a structural steel base plate and full-length channel stiffeners.
 - d. Exterior of compressor shall be wrapped with a high-density sound-attenuating blanket and housed in an acoustically treated enclosure.
 - e. Factory-Installed Safeties:
 - 1) Anti-recycle timer.
 - 2) High-pressure cutout.
 - 3) Low-pressure cutout or loss of charge switch.
 - 4) Internal thermal-overload protection.
 - 5) Freezestat to stop compressor if water-loop temperature in refrigerant-to-water heat exchanger falls below 35 deg F (2 deg C).
 - 6) Water-coil, low-temperature switch.
 6. Refrigerant Piping Materials: ASTM B 743 copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
 7. Pipe Insulation: Refrigerant minimum 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) thick, flexible elastomeric insulation on piping exposed to airflow through the unit. Maximum 25/50 flame-spread/smoke-developed indexes according to ASTM E 84.
 8. Refrigerant Metering Device: Thermal-expansion valve.
 9. Refrigerant Metering Device: Dual-port, thermal-expansion valve to allow specified operation with entering-water temperatures from 25 to 125 deg F (minus 4 to plus 52 deg C).
- F. Controls: Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC."
- G. Controls:

1. Basic Unit Control Modes and Devices:
 - a. Unit shutdown on high or low refrigerant pressures.
 - b. Unit shutdown on low water temperature.
 - c. Low- and high-voltage protection.
 - d. Overcurrent protection for compressor.
 - e. Random time delay, three to 10 seconds, start on power-up.
 - f. Time delay override for servicing.
 - g. Control voltage transformer.
 - h. Water-coil freeze protection (selectable for water or antifreeze).
 - i. Automatic intelligent reset. Unit shall automatically reset five minutes after trip if the fault has cleared. Should a fault reoccur three times sequentially, lockout requiring manual reset occurs.
 - j. Ability to defeat time delays for servicing.
 - k. Digital display to indicate high pressure, low pressure, low voltage, and high voltage.
 - l. The low-pressure switch shall not be monitored for the first 90 seconds after a compressor start command to prevent nuisance safety trips.
 - m. Remote fault-type indication at thermostat.
 - n. Selectable 24-V dc or pilot duty dry contact alarm output.
 - o. 24-V dc output to cycle a motorized water valve with compressor contactor.
 - p. Service test mode for troubleshooting and service.
 - q. Unit-performance sentinel warns when heat pump is running inefficiently.
 - r. Compressor soft start.

2. Thermostat:

- a. Wall-Mounted Thermostat:
 - 1) By temperature control contractor.

3. DDC interface requirements as further described in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC".

- a. Interface relay for scheduled operation.
- b. Interface relay to provide indication of fault at central workstation.
- c. Provide BAC-net or LonWorks interface for central DDC workstation for the following functions:
 - 1) Set-point adjustment.
 - 2) Start/stop and operating status of heat-pump unit.
 - 3) Data inquiry to include supply-air and room-air temperature and humidity, and entering-water temperature.
 - 4) Occupied and unoccupied schedules.

H. Electrical Connection: Single electrical connection with fused disconnect.

I. Capacities and Characteristics: See equipment schedule on drawings.

2.3. WATER-SOURCE UNITARY HEAT PUMPS LARGER THAN 6 TONS (21 kW)

A. See equipment schedule on drawings for manufacturers

B. Description: Packaged water-source unitary heat pump with temperature controls; factory assembled, piped, wired, tested, and rated according to ASHRAE/ARI/ISO-13256-1.

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Cabinet and Chassis: Galvanized-steel casing with the following features:
1. Access panel for access and maintenance of internal components.
 2. Knockouts for electrical and piping connections.
 3. Cabinet Insulation: Glass-fiber liner, minimum 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick, complying with UL 181, ASTM C 1071, and ASTM G 21.
- D. Water Circuits:
1. Refrigerant-to-Water Heat Exchangers:
 - a. Source-side coaxial heat exchangers with copper water tube, with enhanced heat-transfer surfaces inside a steel shell; both shell and tube are leak tested to 450 psig (3102 kPa) on refrigerant side and 400 psig (2758 kPa) on water side.
 - b. Load-side coaxial heat exchangers with copper water tube, with enhanced heat-transfer surfaces inside a steel shell; both shell and tube are leak tested to 450 psig (3102 kPa) on refrigerant side and 400 psig (2758 kPa) on water side.
 - c. Stainless-steel, brazed-plate heat exchanger is leak tested to 450 psig (3102 kPa) on refrigerant side and 400 psig (2758 kPa) on water side. Factory mount heat exchanger in unit on resilient rubber vibration isolators.
 - d. Hot-water generator, vented double wall copper tube with enhanced heat-transfer surfaces inside a steel shell; both shell and tube are leak tested to 450 psig (3102 kPa) on refrigerant side and 400 psig (2758 kPa) on water side, pump, circuit breaker, high water temperature and low water refrigerant cutoffs, and tank connection.
- E. Refrigerant Circuit Components:
1. Sealed Refrigerant Circuit: Charge with R-410A refrigerant.
 2. Filter-Dryer: Factory installed to clean and dehydrate the refrigerant circuit.
 3. Charging Connections: Service fittings on suction and liquid for charging and testing on each circuit.
 4. Reversing Valve: Four-way, solenoid-activated valve designed to be fail-safe in heating position with replaceable magnetic coil.
 5. Compressor:
 - a. Scroll.
 - b. Two stage.
 - c. Installed on vibration isolators and mounted on a structural steel base plate and full-length channel stiffeners.
 - d. Exterior of compressor shall be wrapped with a high-density sound-attenuating blanket and housed in an acoustically treated enclosure.
 - e. Factory-Installed Safeties:
 - 1) Anti-recycle timer.
 - 2) High-pressure cutout.
 - 3) Low-pressure cutout or loss of charge switch.
 - 4) Internal thermal-overload protection.
 - 5) Freezestat to stop compressor if water-loop temperature in refrigerant-to-water heat exchanger falls below 35 deg F (2 deg C).
 - 6) Water-coil, low-temperature switch.

6. Refrigerant Piping Materials: ASTM B 743 copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
 7. Pipe Insulation: Refrigerant minimum 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) thick, flexible elastomeric insulation on piping exposed to airflow through the unit. Maximum 25/50 flame-spread/smoke-developed indexes according to ASTM E 84.
 8. Refrigerant Metering Device: Thermal-expansion valve.
 9. Refrigerant Metering Device: Dual-port, thermal-expansion valve to allow specified operation with entering-water temperatures from 25 to 125 deg F (minus 4 to plus 52 deg C).
- F. Controls: Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC".
- G. Controls:
1. Basic Unit Control Modes and Devices:
 - a. Unit shutdown on high or low refrigerant pressures.
 - b. Unit shutdown on low water temperature.
 - c. Low- and high-voltage protection.
 - d. Overcurrent protection for compressor.
 - e. Random time delay, three to 10 seconds, start on power-up.
 - f. Time delay override for servicing.
 - g. Control voltage transformer.
 - h. Water-coil freeze protection (selectable for water or antifreeze).
 - i. Automatic intelligent reset. Unit shall automatically reset five minutes after trip if the fault has cleared. Should a fault reoccur three times sequentially, lockout requiring manual reset occurs.
 - j. Ability to defeat time delays for servicing.
 - k. Digital display to indicate high pressure, low pressure, low voltage, and high voltage.
 - l. The low-pressure switch shall not be monitored for the first 90 seconds after a compressor start command to prevent nuisance safety trips.
 - m. Remote fault-type indication at thermostat.
 - n. Selectable 24-V dc or pilot duty dry contact alarm output.
 - o. 24-V dc output to cycle a motorized water valve with compressor contactor.
 - p. Service test mode for troubleshooting and service.
 - q. Unit-performance sentinel warns when heat pump is running inefficiently.
 - r. Compressor soft start.
 2. Thermostat:
 - a. Wall-Mounted Thermostat:
 - 1) By temperature control contractor.
 3. DDC interface requirements as further described in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC".
 - a. Interface relay for scheduled operation.
 - b. Interface relay to provide indication of fault at central workstation.
 - c. Provide BAC-net or LonWorks interface for central DDC workstation for the following functions:
 - 1) Set-point adjustment

- 2) Start/stop and operating status of heat-pump unit.
- 3) Data inquiry to include supply-air and room-air temperature and humidity, and entering-water temperature.
- 4) Occupied and unoccupied schedules.

H. Electrical Connection: Single electrical connection with fused disconnect.

I. Capacities and Characteristics: See equipment schedule on drawings.

2.4. ACCESSORIES

A. Heat Pump Units.

1. Vertical Unit.

a. Floor Stand.

2. Console Unit.

a. Floor base to elevate unit off floor.

B. Hose Kits: Tag hose kits to equipment designations.

1. Minimum Working Pressure: 400 psig (2758 kPa).
2. Operating Temperatures: From 33 to 211 deg F (1 to 100 deg C).
3. Hose Length: 24 inches (600 mm) or 36 inches (900 mm).
4. Minimum Hose Diameter: Equal to water-source unitary heat-pump piping connection.
5. Hose Material: Braided stainless steel with adapters for pipe connections.
6. Isolation Valves: Two-piece, bronze-body ball valves with stainless-steel ball and stem, standard-port threaded connections, and galvanized-steel lever handle. Valves shall be factory installed on supply and return connections of both load-side and source-side heat exchangers. If balancing valve is combination shutoff type with memory stop, the isolation valve may be omitted on the return.
7. Strainer: Y-pattern with blowdown valve in supply connections of both load and source side of heat exchangers.
8. Balancing Valves: Mount in return connection. Include meter ports to allow flow measurement with differential pressure gage.
 - a. Automatic balancing valve, factory set to operate within 10 percent of design flow rate over a pressure range of 2 to 80 psig (13.8 to 552 kPa).
 - b. Manual, calibrated-orifice balancing valve with memory stop.
 - c. Manual, venturi-type balancing valve with memory stop.
9. Water-Regulating Valve Assemblies: A direct acting valve regulates discharge pressure during the cooling cycle, and a reverse acting valve regulates the suction pressure during the heating cycle. Valves shall close when heat-pump compressor is not running.
10. Motorized Water Valve: Stop water flow through the unit when compressor is off. Slow-acting, 24-V dc valve with threaded connections is installed between isolation valves and heat exchanger.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electric installations for water-source unitary heat pumps to verify actual locations of piping connections and electrical conduits before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2. INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install water-source, unitary heat pumps as shown on drawings.
 - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration-isolation and seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- B. Suspend water-source, unitary heat pumps from structure with all-thread hanger rods and spring hangers Hanger rods and attachments to structure are specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment." Vibration hangers are specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- C. Install wall-mounting thermostats and switch controls in electrical outlet boxes at heights to match lighting controls or as required in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."

3.3. CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Specific connection requirements are as follows:
 - 1. Connect supply and return hydronic piping to heat pump with unions, control valves, circuit setters, drain valves, shutoff valves and hose kits.
- B. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer but not specified to be factory mounted.
- C. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow space for service and maintenance.

3.4. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections:
 - 1. After installing water to water heat pumps and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.

4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Heat pumps will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
 - D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.5. STARTUP SERVICE
- A. Perform startup service.
 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
 3. Inspect for visible damage to compressor and coils.
 4. Inspect internal insulation.
 5. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
 6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
 7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
 8. Adjust vibration isolators.
 9. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 10. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
 11. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
 12. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
 13. Verify thermostat calibration.
 14. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
- 3.6. ADJUSTING
- A. Adjust initial temperature set points.
 - B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
 - C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
- 3.7. DEMONSTRATION
- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain water-source unitary heat pumps.

END 23 8146

1. GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDES

- A. Base Bid: Contractor shall provide:
 - 1. Building wire and cable as shown on drawings or specified including feeders, branch circuit power, lighting systems and other systems specified.
 - 2. Wiring connectors and connections.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

1.3 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this Section with minimum 3 years experience.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit shop drawings and product data.
- B. Indicate material specifications, dimensions, capacities and color coding.
- C. Provide product data for all wire and cable.
- D. Submit manufacturers' installation instructions.

1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of ANSI/NFPA 70.
- B. Furnish products listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. or testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for purpose specified and shown.

1.6 REFERENCES

- A. If conflict between referenced standards and contract documents, notify Architect/Engineer immediately. Do not proceed with the work until the Architect/Engineer issues instructions.
- B. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA):
 - 1. WC 3 - Rubber-Insulated Wire and Cable for the Transmission and Distribution of Electrical Energy.
 - 2. WC 5 - Thermoplastic-Insulated Wire and Cable for the Transmission and Distribution of Electrical Energy.
 - 3. WC 7 - Cross-Linked-Thermosetting-Polyethylene-Insulated Wire and Cable for the Transmission and Distribution of Electrical Energy.
- C. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA): NFPA 70- National Electrical Code.
- D. Underwriter's laboratories, Inc. (UL): Listed and labeled materials.

- E. Manufacturers' Catalogs: Specified manufacturers' catalogs are incorporated by reference to same force and effect as if repeated herein full.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on Drawings.
- B. Conductors shall be copper.
- C. Where wire and cable routing is not shown, and destination only is indicated, determine exact routing and lengths required.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Determine required separation between cable and other work.
- B. Determine cable routing to avoid interference with other work.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1 BUILDING WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Thermoplastic insulated building wire: NEMA WC 5, UL-83 ICEA S-61-402 or S-66-524.
- B. Feeders larger than 250 MCM: Copper, stranded conductor, 600volt insulation XHHW.
- C. Feeders and branch circuits larger than 8 AWG and smaller than 250 MCM: Copper, stranded conductor, 600volt insulation THHN/THWN.
- D. Feeders and branch circuits 8 AWG and smaller: Copper conductor, 600volt insulation THHN/THWN, solid or stranded conductor.
- E. Control Circuits: Copper, stranded conductor, 600volt insulation TFFN, THW, or THHN/THWN.
- F. Low voltage wire for lighting controls: #14 plenum rated. 3 conductor cable or as indicated in 260923.
- G. Color code conductors as specified in Section 260580 - Electrical Identification.

2.2 JOINTS AND SPLICES

- A. Make terminations, taps and splices with an indent type pressure connector with insulating cover for 8 AWG and smaller.
- B. Instead of indent type connectors insulated spring compression connectors may be used for 10 AWG and smaller.
- C. Use mechanical compression or bolted type connector for 6 AWG or larger. Cover connector with insulating type or heat shrinkable insulation equivalent to 150% conductor insulation.

2.3 WIRE PULLING LUBRICANT

- A. Pulling lubricant shall be a UL listed, water-based, polymer solution. Lubricants containing waxes or soaps are not acceptable.

- B. The lubricant shall be compatible with the cable insulation and shall not cause any premature deterioration of the insulating material. When use on high voltage cable, the lubricant shall not affect the volume resistance of any semi-conducting jacket or insulation shield present.
- C. Dried residue from lubricant shall not become tacky or gum-up. Cables shall remain able to pull after lubricant has dried.
- D. The lubricant shall be as approved by the cable manufacturer for use with their cables.
- E. Acceptable Manufacturers/Products:
 - 1. American Colloid/Poly-X.
 - 2. American Polywater/Polywater J.
 - 3. ARNCO/Hydra-Lube.
 - 4. Buchanan/Quick Slip.
 - 5. Condux/Super-Lube.
 - 6. Ideal/Aqua-Gel.

3. EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that interior of building has been protected from weather.
- B. Verify that mechanical work likely to damage wire and cable has been completed.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Completely and thoroughly swab raceway before installing wire.

3.3 WIRING METHODS

- A. Concealed Dry Interior Locations: Use building wire, in raceway.
- B. Exposed Dry Interior Locations: Use only building wire, in raceway.
- C. Above Accessible Ceilings: Use building wire, in raceway.
- D. Wet or Damp Interior Locations: Use only building wire, in raceway.
- E. Exterior Locations: Use only building wire, in raceway.
- F. Underground Installations: Use only building wire, in raceway.
- G. Low voltage wire shall be installed in conduit in non accessible locations and where exposed. Plenum rated cable can be installed above. Accessible ceilings support at 5 foot intervals or 1 foot from transition.

3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.
- B. Use conductor not smaller than 12 AWG for power and lighting circuits.
- C. Use conductor not smaller than 14 AWG for control circuits.

- D. Use 10 AWG conductors for 20 ampere, 120volt branch circuits longer than 80 feet.
- E. Use 10 AWG conductors for 20 ampere, 277volt branch circuits longer than 140 feet.
- F. Pull all conductors into raceway at same time.
- G. Use suitable wire pulling lubricant for building wire 4 AWG and larger.
- H. Protect exposed cable from damage.
- I. Use suitable cable fittings and connectors.
- J. Neatly train and lace wiring inside boxes, equipment, and panel boards.
- K. Clean conductor surfaces before installing lugs and connectors.
- L. Make splices, taps and terminations to carry full ampacity of conductors with no perceivable temperature rise.
- M. Place an equal number of conductors for each phase of a circuit in same raceway or cable.
- N. Splice only in accessible junction, outlet boxes, cable tray or surface metal raceway.
- O. Make conductors equal lengths for parallel circuits.
- P. Provide dedicated neutral conductor for each circuit from the Dimmer Equipment.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify wire and cable under provisions of Section 26 05 53.
- B. Identify each conductor with its circuit number or other designation.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect wire and cable for physical damage and proper connection.
- B. Measure tightness of bolted connections and compare torque measurements with manufacturer's recommended values.
- C. Verify continuity of each branch circuit conductor.

END 26 0523

1. GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Contractor shall provide:
 - 1. Grounding for new panelboards to existing grounding system.
 - 2. Grounding for Control Circuitry.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Equipment Ground Conductor:
 - 1. The conductor that connects the noncurrent-carrying metal parts of equipment to the grounding electrode system or ground bus.
- B. Grounded Circuit Conductor:
 - 1. A circuit conductor, usually the neutral that is intentionally connected to ground.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements:
 - 1. Comply with National Electric Code.
 - 2. Comply with Public Authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Source Quality Control
 - 1. The authority having jurisdiction will inspect the installation for compliance with governing codes.

1.4 REFERENCES. Specified references, or cited portions thereof, current at date of bidding documents unless otherwise specified, govern the work. In conflict between referenced standards and contract documents, notify Architect/Engineer immediately. Confirm notification in writing. Do not proceed with the work until the Architect/Engineer issues written instructions.

- A. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA): NFPA 70 - National electrical Code (NEC).
- B. Furnish products listed and classified by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) as suitable for purpose specified and shown.
- C. Manufacturers' Catalogs: Specification manufacturers' catalogs are incorporated by reference to same force and effect as if repeated herein in full.
- D. ANSI C2 - National Electrical Safety code.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit Product Data: Provide data for grounding electrodes and connections.
- B. Submit Test Reports: Indicate overall resistance to ground in accordance with section 26 08 00.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Connections:
 - 1. All rod to rod, rod to cable, cable to cable, and cable to structural steel connections shall

- be by an approved exothermic or mechanical weld process.
 - 2. Connections to metallic pipe may be by either exothermic weld or approved ground clamp.
 - 3. Any splices to ground electrode conductors shall be exothermic weld only.
- B. Terminating Lugs:
- 1. Exothermic weld, mechanical weld, or crimp compression type.
- C. Wire:
- 1. Equipment grounding conductors shall be insulated. Insulation shall be 600 volt, same type as phase conductors, green in color. Use yellow tracer stripes to distinguish different grounding systems.
 - 2. Ground electrode conductors shall be bare annealed copper.

3. EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Provide a separate equipment grounding conductor in all feeders and branch circuits, unless indicated otherwise on the drawings. Terminate each end on grounding lug, bus or busing.
- B. Bond all raceways, cabinet enclosures, and non-current carrying parts of equipment to grounding system. Bond raceways such that a continuous path for current flow is maintained.
- C. Separately Derived Systems:
 - 1. Bond neutral of transformers to metal equipment enclosure or frame. Provide connection from enclosure to nearest metallic water pipe or structural steel member.
- D. **Bond all grounding systems together. Size of bonding conductor shall be at least the size of the largest grounding electrode conductor.**
- E. Ground electrode conductors shall be run exposed whenever possible. If conduit is needed for protection, Schedule 40 conduit shall be used. All cable clamps and conduit supports shall be designed so they do NOT totally encircle conduit or cable in metal.
- F. All connections to the metallic water piping shall be made using either approved ground clamps or exothermic welds. All connections to structural steel shall be by the exothermic weld process.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field inspection and testing will be performed under provisions of section 26 08 00.
- B. Submit under provisions of section 01 78 39.
- C. Inspect grounding and bonding system conductors and connections for tightness and proper installation.
- D. Use suitable test instrument to measure resistance to ground of system. Perform testing in accordance with test instrument manufacturer's recommendations using the fall-of-potential method.
- E. Resistance measurement shall be from the system neutral connection at the service entrance to a convenient ground reference point. The ground reference point should be located to minimize the effects of other existing grounding electrodes.

- F. Ground resistance shall not exceed 10 OHMS. When resistance exceeds 5 OHMS, one of the following measures shall be taken to reduce the ground resistance:
1. Drive and bond additional ground rods at two rod length intervals.
 2. Treat the soil in the vicinity of the electrode with metallic salts.
 3. Remove soil from around the electrode and replace with bentonite.
 4. Use a UL approved electrolytic chemical ground rod.
- G. All resistance tests shall be taken no sooner than 48 hours after a measurable rainfall.

END 26 0526

1. GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDES

- A. Base Bid: Contractor shall provide:
 - 1. Conduit and equipment supports.
 - 2. Cable support hooks.
 - 3. Anchors and fasteners.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. NECA - National Contractors Association.
- B. ANSI/NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 33 00.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's catalog data for fastening systems.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by Product testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, installation, and starting of Product.

1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of ANSI/NFPA 70.
- B. Conform to requirements for Seismic Restraint of IBC 2012.
- C. Furnish products listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. or other testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for purpose specified and shown.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Materials and Finishes: Provide adequate corrosion resistance.
- B. Provide materials, sizes, and types of anchors, fasteners and supports to carry the loads of equipment and conduit. Consider weight of wire in conduit when selecting products.
- C. Anchors and Fasteners:
 - 1. Concrete Structural Elements: Use expansion anchors and preset inserts.
 - 2. Steel Structural Elements: Use beam clamps, steel ramset fasteners and welded fasteners.
 - 3. Concrete Surfaces: Use self-drilling anchors and expansion anchors.
 - 4. Hollow Masonry, Plaster, and Gypsum Board Partitions: Use toggle bolts and hollow wall fasteners.
 - 5. Solid Masonry Walls: Use expansion anchors and preset inserts.
 - 6. Sheet Metal: Use sheet metal screws.

7. Wood Elements: Use wood screws.

D. Steel Channel

1. Description: Galvanized, Huskey HP-200, Kindorf B-901, Unistrut P-1000 or B-Line B22. Combine channels to provide adequate strength and stability to support equipment as indicated on plans and approved by the Architect/Engineer. Steel channel shall be sized to prevent buckling, shall be clamped to pipe or equipment rods utilizing a minimum of three ductile iron clamps at each restraint location when required. Welding of support rods is not acceptable. Rod clamp assemblies shall have an Anchorage Pre-approval "R" Number from OSHPD in the State of California.

3. EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Provide anchors, fasteners, and supports in accordance with NECA "Standard of Installation".
- C. Do not fasten supports to pipes, ducts, mechanical equipment, and conduit.
- D. Spring-steel fasteners specifically designed for supporting single conduits or tubing may be used instead of malleable-iron hangers for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving lighting, receptacle, and communications circuits above suspended ceilings and concealed within walls.
- E. Spring -steel fasteners (beam, purlin, wire, rod, etc.) designed for friction-fit attachment are not acceptable. Fasteners must use a minimum of one mechanical (set screw, bolt and clamp) element for attachment.
- F. Do not use powder-actuated anchors.
- G. Do not drill or cut structural members.
- H. Fabricate supports from structural steel or steel channel. Rigidly weld members or use hexagon head bolts to present neat appearance with adequate strength and rigidity. Use spring lock washers under all nuts.
- I. Install surface-mounted cabinets and panel boards with minimum of four anchors.
- J. In wet and damp locations use steel channel supports to stand cabinets and panel boards one inch off wall.
- K. Use sheet metal channel to bridge studs above and below cabinets and panel boards recessed in hollow partitions.
- L. Touch-up any material damaged during construction.

END 26 0529

1. GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDES

- A. Base Bid: Contractor shall provide:
1. Flexible metal conduit.
 2. Electrical metallic tubing.
 3. Electrical non-metallic
 4. Fittings and conduit bodies.
 5. Fire seal of all conduits passing through fire partitions.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI C80.1 - Rigid Steel Conduit, Zinc Coated.
- B. ANSI C80.3 - Electrical Metallic Tubing, Zinc Coated.
- C. ANSI C80.5 - Rigid Aluminum Conduit.
- D. ANSI/NEMA FB 1 - Fittings, Cast Metal Boxes, and Conduit Bodies for Conduit and Cable Assemblies.
- E. ANSI/NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- F. NECA "Standard of Installation."
- G. NEMA TC 2 - Electrical Plastic Tubing (EPT) and Conduit (EPC-40 and EPC-80).
- H. NEMA TC 3 - PVC Fittings for Use with Rigid PVC Conduit and Tubing.
- I. NEMA TC 13 – Electrical Non Metallic Tubing.

1.3 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conduit Size: ANSI/NFPA 70.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals for approval by the engineer are not required for this section. Un-requested submittals will not be processed or reviewed. Non-requirement of submittals is not to be construed as an allowance for substitutions and does not relieve the contractor from full compliance with the plans and specifications.

1.5 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Submit Project Record Documents.
- B. Accurately record actual routing of conduits.

1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of ANSI/NFPA 70.
- B. Furnish products listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. or other testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for purpose specified and shown.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept conduit on site. Inspect for damage.
- B. Protect conduit from corrosion and entrance of debris by storing above grade. Provide appropriate covering.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on Drawings.
- B. Verify routing and termination locations of conduit prior to rough-in.
- C. Provide conduit as required to complete wiring system. All 120V and above wiring shall be provided in conduit.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUIT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Size: 3/4 inch unless otherwise specified.
- B. Outdoor Locations, Above Grade: Use rigid steel conduit.
- C. In Slab above Grade: No conduit shall be installed in slab above grade. All conduit installed below slab shall be in rock base.
- D. Wet and Damp Locations: Use rigid steel conduit.
- E. Dry Locations: Electric metallic tubing. In exposed areas provide rigid steel to 6 inches above finished floor.

2.2 METAL CONDUIT

- A. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1.
- B. Fittings and Conduit Bodies: ANSI/NEMA FB 1; material to match conduit.
- C. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886 and NFPA 70.

2.3 FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT

- A. Description: Interlocked steel construction.
- B. Fittings: ANSI/NEMA FB 1.

2.4 LIQUIDTIGHT FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT

- A. Description: Interlocked steel construction with PVC jacket.
- B. Fittings: ANSI/NEMA FB 1.

2.5 ELECTRICAL METALLIC TUBING (EMT)

- A. Description: ANSI C80.3; galvanized tubing.
- B. Fittings and Conduit Bodies: ANSI/NEMA FB 1; steel compression type.

2.6 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT

- A. Description: NEMA TC 2; Schedule 40 PVC.
- B. Fittings and Conduit Bodies: NEMA TC 3.

2.7 SEALING

A. Fire Seal

1. Seal penetrations of fire-rated walls, floors or ceilings by raceways for compliance with NEC 300.21. Fill void around raceway. Use heavy wall steel pipe sleeves, anchored to building construction and finished plumb with wall ceiling or floor lines. Acceptable products:
 - a. Spec-Seal - SSS
 - b. T & B - Flamesafe
 - c. 3M - Fire Barrier
2. Smoke and fire stop fittings may be used in lieu of sealant. Acceptable products:
 - a. OZ-Gedney, series CFS

B. Water Seal

1. Seal penetrations of perimeter walls or floors below grade to prevent entry of water. Seal both exterior of conduit and interior of conduit around cables. Use materials compatible with wall or floor construction and approved by Architect/Engineer.
2. Seal penetrations of roof with flashing compatible with roof design and approved by Roofing System Manufacturer and Architect/Engineer.

C.

2.8 SUPPORTING DEVICES

A. Suspended conduits less than 1 inch.

1. For exposed construction, provide strap type hangers supported from beam clamps or threaded rods. Hangers manufactured by Minerallac, Midwest Electric, Crouse-Hinds, T & B or B-Line are acceptable. Hangers will be required to suspend below the drywall ceiling fire barrier. Coordinate installation with the drywall installation. Provide fire seal at all drywall penetrations.
2. For conduits suspended above ceilings, anchor to building structural steel or hat channels above drywall, seal all fire rated drywall penetrations. When span exceeds NEC limits, provide channel steel between framing members. Tie wiring of conduit to air ducts, structural steel, piping or other elements not permitted. Plumber's perforated strap not permitted. Do not attach conduit to ceiling support wires.

B. Surface Mounted Conduit

1. Provide one-hole galvanized steel straps for conduits one inch or less manufactured by Appleton, Steel City, B-Line or Raco. Provide clamp backs on exterior walls below grade or in wet areas.
2. For conduit larger than one inch and all exterior surfaces, use galvanized, malleable iron pipe straps.
3. For multiple conduits, provide channel anchored to wall with conduit attached to channel with split pipe clamps. Provide space for 25% additional conduits.

3. EXECUTION

3.1 INTERFERENCES

- A. Coordinate work with other contractors so that interference between piping, equipment, structural and electrical work will be avoided.
- B. If interference develops, A/E will decide which equipment will be relocated; regardless of which apparatus was installed first.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install conduit in accordance with NECA "Standard of Installation."
- B. Install nonmetallic conduit in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Nonmetallic conduits, fittings and accessories shall be of same manufacturer.
- C. Arrange supports to prevent misalignment during wiring installation.
- D. Group related conduits; support using conduit rack. Construct rack using steel channel; provide space on each for 25 percent additional conduits.
- E. Fasten conduit supports to building structure and surfaces under provisions of Section 260529.
- F. Do not support conduit with wire or perforated pipe straps. Remove wire used for temporary supports
- G. Do not attach conduit to ceiling support wires.
- H. Arrange conduit to maintain headroom and present neat appearance.
- I. Route exposed conduit parallel and perpendicular to walls.
- J. Route conduit installed above accessible ceilings parallel and perpendicular to walls.
- K. Route conduit under slab from point-to-point, coordinate with sub-slab heating piping. **No conduit shall be installed in slab.** All conduit shall be below insulation for sub-slab heating system.
- L. Maintain adequate clearance between conduit and piping.
- M. Maintain 12 inches (300 mm) clearance between conduit and surfaces with temperatures exceeding 104 degrees F (40 degrees C).
- N. Cut conduit square using saw or pipe-cutter; de-burr cut ends.
- O. Bring conduit to shoulder of fittings; fasten securely.

- P. Join nonmetallic conduit using cement as recommended by manufacturer. Wipe nonmetallic conduit dry and clean before joining. Apply full even coat of cement to entire area inserted in fitting. Allow joint to cure for 20 minutes, minimum.
- Q. Use conduit hubs or sealing lock nuts to fasten conduit to sheet metal boxes in damp and wet locations.
- R. Install no more than equivalent of three 90-degree bends between boxes. Use conduit bodies to make sharp changes in direction, as around beams. Use hydraulic one-shot bender to fabricate or factory elbows for bends in metal conduit larger than 2 inches (50 mm) size.
- S. Avoid moisture traps; provide junction box with drain fitting at low points in conduit system.
- T. Provide suitable fittings to accommodate expansion and deflection where conduit crosses seismic, control and expansion joints.
- U. Provide suitable pull-string in each empty conduit except sleeves and nipples. Provide bushings on all conduit terminations.
- V. Use suitable caps to protect installed conduit against entrance of dirt and moisture.
- W. Rigid Steel Conduit elbows will be required when penetrating the floor slab.
- X. Ground and bond conduit under provisions of Section 26 05 26.
- Y. Identify conduit under provisions of Section 26 05 53.

3.3 INTERFACE WITH OTHER PRODUCTS

- A. Install conduit to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements.
- B. Route conduit through roof openings for piping and ductwork or through suitable roof jack with pitch pocket.
- C. Install conduits to preserve moisture barriers of partitions and other elements.

END 26 0530

1. GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Base Bid: Contractor shall provide:
 - 1. Wall and ceiling outlet boxes.
 - 2. Pull and junction boxes.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. NECA - Standard of Installation.
- B. NEMA FB 1 - Fittings and Supports for Conduit and Cable Assemblies.
- C. NEMA OS 1 - Sheet-steel Outlet Boxes, Device Boxes, Covers, and Box Supports.
- D. NEMA OS 2 - Nonmetallic Outlet Boxes, Device Boxes, Covers and Box Supports.
- E. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum).
- F. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 33 00.
- B. Record actual locations and mounting heights of outlet, pull, and junction boxes on project record documents.

1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Provide Products listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. or other testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1 OUTLET BOXES

- A. Sheet Metal Outlet Boxes: NEMA OS 1, galvanized steel.
 - 1. Luminaire and Equipment Supporting Boxes: Rated for weight of equipment supported; include 1/2 inch male fixture studs where required.
- B. Cast Boxes: NEMA FB 1, Type FD, aluminum or cast ferrous alloy. Provide gasketed cover by box manufacturer. Provide threaded hubs.
- C. Wall Plates for Finished Areas: As specified in Section 26 27 26.

2.2 PULL AND JUNCTION BOXES

- A. Sheet Metal Boxes: NEMA OS 1, galvanized steel.

- B. Hinged Enclosures:
- C. Surface Mounted Cast Metal Box: NEMA 250, Type 4; flat-flanged, surface mounted junction box:
 - 1. Material: Galvanized cast iron or Cast aluminum.
 - 2. Cover: Furnish with ground flange, neoprene gasket, and stainless steel cover screws.
- D. Exterior In-Grade
 - 1. Polymer concrete with reinforced heavy-weave fiberglass with neoprene gasket and cover and stainless steel tamper proof hardware.
 - 2. Label cover with service provided. (i.e.: "Power", "Lighting", or "Communications")
 - 3. Boxes located in vehicular traffic areas to have 15,000 lb rated lids.

3. EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify locations of floor boxes and outlets prior to rough-in.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install boxes in accordance with NECA "Standard of Installation."
- B. Install in locations as shown on Drawings, and as required for splices, taps, wire pulling, equipment connections and compliance with regulatory requirements.
- C. Set wall mounted boxes at elevations to accommodate mounting heights specified in section for outlet device.
- D. Switch boxes shall be set at 48" AFF to top of box.
- E. Receptacle and data outlet boxes to be mounted at 18" to top of box.
- F. Electrical boxes are shown on Drawings in approximate locations unless dimensioned. Adjust box location up to 10 feet if required to accommodate intended purpose.
- G. Orient boxes to accommodate wiring devices oriented as specified in Section 26 27 26.
- H. Maintain headroom and present neat mechanical appearance.
- I. Install pull boxes and junction boxes above accessible ceilings and in unfinished areas only.
- J. Inaccessible Ceiling Areas: Install outlet and junction boxes no more than 6 inches from ceiling access panel or from removable recessed luminaire.
- K. Install boxes to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements.
- L. Coordinate mounting heights and locations of outlets mounted above counters, benches, and backsplashes.
- M. Locate outlet boxes to allow luminaires positioned as shown on reflected ceiling plan.
- N. Align adjacent wall mounted outlet boxes for switches, thermostats, and similar devices.
- O. Use flush mounting outlet box in finished areas.

- P. Locate flush mounting box in masonry wall to require cutting of masonry unit corner only. Coordinate masonry cutting to achieve neat opening.
- Q. Do not install flush mounting box back-to-back in walls; provide minimum 6 inches separation. Provide minimum 24 inches separation in acoustic rated walls.
- R. Secure flush mounting box to interior wall and partition studs. Accurately position to allow for surface finish thickness.
- S. Use stamped steel bridges to fasten flush mounting outlet box between studs.
- T. Install flush mounting box without damaging wall insulation or reducing its effectiveness.
- U. Use adjustable steel channel fasteners for hung ceiling outlet box.
- V. Do not fasten boxes to ceiling support wires.
- W. Support boxes independently of conduit.
- X. Use gang box where more than one device is mounted together. Do not use sectional box.
- Y. Use gang box with plaster ring for single device outlets.
- Z. Use cast outlet box in exterior locations exposed to the weather and wet locations.

3.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of outlet box for equipment indicated on drawings.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Install knockout closures in unused box openings.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of boxes to remove dust, debris, and other material.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces and restore finish.

END 26 0533

1. GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDES

- A. Base Bid: Electrical contractor provide:
 - 1. Hinged cover enclosures.
 - 2. Cabinets.
 - 3. Accessories.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 260533 - Conduit
- B. Section 260534 - Boxes
- C. Section 260529 - Supporting Devices

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum).
- B. NEMA ICS 4 - Terminal Blocks for Industrial Control Equipment and Systems.
- C. ANSI/NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code, 2014 edition.
- D. IBC 2009 – International Building Code: seismic hazard and performance.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit per Division 1. Provide manufacturer's standard data for enclosures and cabinets.
- B. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by Product testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, installation, and starting of Product.

1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of ANSI/NFPA 70.
- B. Furnish products listed and classified by a NRTL as suitable for purpose specified and shown.

1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Provide 6 of each cabinet key.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1 HINGED COVER ENCLOSURES

- A. Construction: NEMA 250, Type 1 steel enclosure.
- B. Covers: Continuous hinge, held closed by flush latch operable by key.

- C. Provide interior plywood panel for mounting terminal blocks and electrical components; finish with white enamel.
- D. Enclosure Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel.

2.2 CABINETS

- A. Boxes: Galvanized steel.
- B. Box Size: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Backboard: Provide 3/4 inch thick plywood backboard for mounting terminal blocks. Paint matte white.
- D. Fronts: Steel, surface type with concealed trim clamps, screw cover front, concealed hinge, and flush lock keyed to match branch circuit panelboard. Finish with gray baked enamel
- E. Knockouts: Field punch as needed. Do not use factory concentric knockouts.
- F. Provide metal barriers to separate compartments containing control wiring operating at less than 50 volts from power wiring.
- G. Provide accessory feet for free-standing equipment.

3. EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive Work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install Products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install enclosures and boxes plumb. Anchor securely to wall and structural supports at each corner.
- C. Install cabinet fronts plumb.
- D. Provide support to meet seismic requirements.

END 26 0535

1. GENERAL

1.1. SECTION INCLUDES

A. Base Bid: Contractor shall provide:

1. Wire and cable markers to indicate the breaker on which cable is terminated.
2. Nameplates for disconnects
3. Conduit marking.

1.2. QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with:

1. ANSI A 13.1. Identification of Piping Systems.
2. National Electrical Code. (NEC)

1.3. REFERENCES. Specified references, or cited portions thereof, current at date of bidding documents unless otherwise specified, govern the work. In conflict between referenced standards and contract documents, notify Architect/Engineer immediately. Confirm notification in writing. Do not proceed with the work until the Architect/Engineer issues written instructions.

- A. American National Standards Institute (ANSI): ANSI A13.1 - Identification of Piping Systems.
- B. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA): NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code (NEC).
- C. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL): All products UL listed and labeled.
- D. Manufacturers' Catalogs: Specification manufacturers' catalogs are incorporated by reference to same force and effect as if repeated herein in full.

1.4. SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit product data under provisions of Section 01 33 00.
- B. Submit list of wording, symbols, letter size, and color coding for each piece of equipment specified.
- C. Submit manufacturer's installation instruction under provisions of Section 01 33 00.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. NAMEPLATES AND LABELS

- A. Nameplates: Engraved two-layer laminated plastic, black letters on white background.
- B. Locations:
 1. Panel boards.
 2. Disconnect Switches.
- C. Size of plate shall be commensurate with lettering thereon.
- D. Lettering for disconnect switches, shall be 1/4" in height.
- E. Wording on plate shall contain the following information as appropriate.

1. Drawing nomenclature, such as Panel LP1.
2. Voltage.
3. Location of panel feed from.

2.2. WIRE IDENTIFICATION

- A. Provide wire markers on each conductor in panel board gutters, pull boxes, outlet and junction boxes, and at load connection. Identify with branch circuit or feeder number and source panel for power and lighting circuits. Provide wire markers for all new and existing cables.

- B. Wire Insulation Color:

Conductor	120/240, 1 Phase	120/208V, 3 Phase
Phase A	Black	Black
Phase B	Red	Red
Phase C	N/A	Blue
Neutral	White	White
Ground	Green	Green

1. Equipment Ground: Green
2. Isolated Ground: Green with Yellow Stripe

- C. Code all wire and cable larger than color coded sizes available from manufacturer by application of electrical plastic tape in colors specified. Apply tape in uniform manner circling wire or cable. Half-lap tape for length of cable as required by the NEC. Tape shall be 3M, Plymouth or Permacel.

- D. Maintain consistent coding throughout installation to ensure proper phase and system identification. If existing cables do not meet this standard, the contractor shall provide colored tape within 6 inches of the termination to indicate the above referenced standard.

2.3. WIRING DEVICE COVERPLATES

- A. The panel name and circuit number serving the wiring device shall be labeled of each faceplate.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. APPLICATION

- A. Permanently mark all junction boxes with the panel and circuit number.

END 26 0533

1. GENERAL

1.1. WORK INCLUDES

A. Base Bid: Contractor shall provide:

1. Electrical connections to equipment specified under other sections.

1.2. REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- B. Division 8
- C. Division 21
- D. Division 22
- E. Division 23

1.3. COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate work under this section with all work provided by other contractors.
- B. Obtain and review shop drawings, product data, and manufacturer's instructions for equipment furnished under other sections.
- C. Determine connection locations and requirements prior to rough-in. Provide allowances in conduit, wire, hangers, etc. for rough-in locations to be modified by 15 feet.
- D. Sequence rough-in of electrical connections to coordinate with installation schedule for equipment.
- E. Sequence electrical connections to coordinate with start-up schedule for equipment.

2. PRODUCTS

Not Used

3. EXECUTION

3.1. EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that equipment is ready for electrical connection, wiring, and energization.

3.2. ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Make electrical connections in accordance with equipment manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Make conduit connections to equipment using flexible conduit. Use liquid tight flexible conduit with watertight connectors in damp or wet locations.
- C. Make wiring connections using wire and cable with insulation suitable for temperatures encountered in heat producing equipment.

- D. Provide suitable strain-relief clamps and fittings for cord connections at outlet boxes and equipment connection boxes.
- E. Install disconnect switches, controllers, control stations, and control devices as indicated.
- F. Modify equipment control wiring with terminal block jumpers as indicated.
- G. Provide interconnecting conduit and wiring between devices and equipment where indicated.
- H. Where flexible metal conduit or liquid tight flexible metal conduit is used for connection to equipment, a separate insulated conductor (size per NEC) shall be provided for equipment ground. Terminate each end on suitable lug, bus, or bushing.

END 26 0580

1. GENERAL

1.1. WORK INCLUDES

A. Base Bid: Contractor shall provide:

1. Testing of electrical components and systems:
 - a. Insulation resistance test.
 - b. Grounding electrode test.
 - c. Continuity test.
 - d. Voltage test.
 - e. Phase relationship verification.
 - f. Branch circuit receptacle testing.
2. Test reports.
3. Correction of defective components or systems.
4. Retest of corrected components or systems.

1.2. SUBMITTALS

A. Submit Test Reports: submit 3 copies of all test reports to Architect/Engineer.

1. Type each test report on 8-1/2" x 11" paper. Include:
 - a. Project Number.
 - b. Project title and location.
 - c. Test performed.
 - d. Date performed.
 - e. Test equipment used.
 - f. Contractor's name, address and telephone number.
 - g. Testing firm's name, address and telephone number, if other than Contractor.
 - h. Name(s) and title(s) of person(s):
 - 1) Performing test.
 - 2) Observing test.
 - i. Statement verifying each test.
 - j. Nameplate data from each motor and equipment item tested.
 - k. Test results.
 - l. Retest results after correction of defective components, systems.
2. For each copy, assemble all test reports and bind them in a folder. Label each folder, "Electrical Test Reports" and include Project Number, Title and Location.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. MATERIALS. Furnish all equipment, manpower and casual labor to perform specified testing.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. PREPARATION

- A. Ensure that all electrical work is complete and ready for testing. All cables shall be terminated prior to testing. No cables shall be energized until all testing and corrections have been satisfactorily completed.
- B. Disconnect all devices or equipment that might be damaged by application of test voltages, voltage of reversed phase sequence or other test procedures.

3.2. TESTING. Conduct tests and adjust equipment to verify compliance with specified performance.

3.3. INSULATION RESISTANCE TESTS

- A. Resistance measured; Line-to-ground.
- B. Perform testing on the following items:

Item Tested	Voltage of Test	Min. Acceptance Resistance in Megohms
1. No. 2 and larger cables (600V)	1000V	50
2. Motors	500V	5
3. Switchboard, Motor Control Center and Panelboard Buses	1000V	25

3.4. GROUNDING ELECTRODE TEST. Measure and record ground resistance from system neutral connection at service entrance to convenient ground reference point using suitable ground testing equipment. Maximum acceptable resistance: 5 ohms. When resistance exceeds 5 ohms drive and bond another ground rod, one ground rod length away and repeat test.

3.5. VOLTAGE TESTS

- A. Make and record voltage tests at the following listed points. Conduct tests under normal load conditions.
 - 1. Service entrance at main disconnect switch.
 - 2. Secondary terminal of all step down transformers.
 - 3. Terminals switches.

3.6. PHASE RELATIONSHIP

- A. Examine connections to equipment for proper phase relationships. Verify proper motor rotation.

3.7. BRANCH CIRCUIT RECEPTACLES

- A. All receptacles shall be tested for:
 - 1. Ground continuity.
 - 2. Polarity of hot and neutral.

3. Correct operation of ground fault circuit interrupting receptacles (where applicable).
- B. Test reports may be submitted as exceptions only.

3.8. CORRECTION OF DEFECTS

- A. When tests disclose any unsatisfactory workmanship or equipment furnished under this Contract, correct defects and retest. Repeat tests until satisfactory results are obtained.
- B. When any wiring or equipment is damaged by tests, repair or replace such wiring or equipment. Test repaired items to ensure satisfactory operation.

END 26 0800

1. GENERAL

1.1. SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Base Bid:
 - 1. Control modules
 - 2. Occupancy sensors
 - 3. Photocells
 - 4. Power packs
 - 5. Relay panels
 - 6. Wall switches and dimmers
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 26 Section "Building Wire and Cable" for wire and cables for lighting controls except as referenced in this section.
- C. The lighting control system specified in this section shall provide time-based, sensor-based, and manual lighting control.
- D. The system shall be capable of turning lighting loads on/off, as well as dimming lights, where applicable.
- E. System devices shall be networked together, if noted on plans, enabling digital communication, and shall be individually addressable.
- F. The system architecture shall be capable of enabling stand-alone groups (rooms) of devices to function in some default capacity, even if network connectivity to the greater system is lost.
- G. The system architecture shall facilitate remote operation via a computer connection.
- H. The system shall not require any centrally hard-wired switching equipment.

1.2. SEQUENCE

- A. See lighting controls sequence matrix, following this section for additional information on sequence.

1.3. ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product data sheets: general device descriptions, dimensions, wiring details, nomenclature.
- B. Riser diagrams: typical per room type showing device interconnectivity, other diagrams as needed for interaction with other systems.
- C. Contractor start-up worksheet must be completed prior to factory start-up.
 - 1. Documentation of functional testing must be completed for each space, prior to engineer's site inspection.

1.4. CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Hardware and Software Documentation:
 - 1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
 - 2. Program Software Backup: On a CD/DVD, complete with data files.
 - 3. Device address list.
 - 4. Printout of software application.

1.5. COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate lighting control components to form an integrated interconnection of compatible components.
- B. The installing contractor shall be responsible for a complete and functional system in accordance with all applicable local and national codes.

1.6. WARRANTY

- A. All devices in lighting control system shall have a 5 year warranty.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Basis of design: nLight Network Control System by Sensor Switch or subject to compliance and prior approval with specified requirements of this section, one of the following:
 - a. Acuity NLight
 - b. Approved Equivalent
 - c. Phillips
 - 2. The listing of a manufacturer as "acceptable" does not imply automatic approval. It is the responsibility of the electrical contractor to ensure that any price quotation received and submittals made are for lighting control systems which meet or exceed these specifications. This includes ensuring equipment can be located in electrical/mechanical spaces and still allow for required clearances.
- B. System requirements:
 - 1. System shall have an architecture that is based upon three main concepts:
 - a. Intelligent lighting control devices
 - b. Standalone lighting control zones
 - 2. Intelligent lighting control devices shall consist of one or more basic lighting control components: occupancy sensors, photocell sensors, relays, dimming outputs, manual switch stations, and manual dimming stations. Combining one or more of these components into a single device enclosure shall be permissible so as to minimize overall device count of system.

3. Intelligent lighting control devices shall communicate digitally and possess RJ-45 style connectors.
4. Lighting control zones shall consist of one or more intelligent lighting control components, be capable of stand-alone operation, and be capable of being connected to a higher level network backbone.
5. Devices within a lighting control zone shall be connected with CAT-5e low voltage cabling in any order.
6. Lighting control zone shall be capable of automatically configuring itself for default operation without any start-up labor required.
7. Individual lighting control zones must be continue to provide a user defined default level of lighting control in the event of a system communication failure with the backbone network or the management software becoming unavailable.
8. Power for devices within a lighting control zone shall come from either existing devices already present for switching (relay device) or dimming purposes, or from the network backbone. Standalone "bus power supplies" shall not be required in all cases.
9. All switching and dimming for a specific lighting zone shall take place within the devices located in the zone itself (i.e. not in a remotely located device such as a panel) to facilitate system robustness and minimize wiring requirements.
 - a. Exception: Specific applications, such as exterior lighting, that require centralized or remote switching shall be capable of being accommodated.
10. System shall have one or more primary wall mounted network control "gateway" devices that are capable of accessing and controlling connected system devices and linking into an Ethernet LAN.
11. System shall use "bridge" devices that route communication and distribute power for up to 8 directly connected lighting zones together for purposes of decreasing system wiring requirements
12. Individual lighting zones shall be capable of being segmented into several "local" channels of occupancy, photocell, and switch functionality for more advanced configurations and sequences of operation.
13. Devices located in different lighting zones shall be able to communicate occupancy, photocell, and switch information via the wired backbone.
14. System shall be capable of operating a lighting control zone according to several sequences of operation. See drawings for additional information regarding lighting control sequences. System shall be able to change a networked space's sequence of operation according to a time schedule, so as to enable customized time-of-day, day-of-week utilization of a space.
15. Control software shall enable logging of system performance data and presenting useful information in a web-based graphical format and downloadable to .CSV files.
16. System shall provide the option of having pre-terminated plenum-rated CAT5e cabling supplied with hardware.

2.2 LIGHTING CONTROL LOW VOLTAGE SWITCHES

- C. Physical: All switches shall fit into a standard GFI wall opening. Switches shall be available in button configurations according to the wall station schedule in the drawings or via an alternate approved configuration.
- D. Devices shall be available with zero or one integrated Class 1 switching relay.
- E. Communication and low voltage power shall be delivered to each device via standard CAT-5 low voltage cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
- F. All switches shall have two RJ-45 ports.

- G. All devices shall provide toggle switch control. Dimming control must be provided as noted in schedule on drawings.
- H. All low voltage switch and trim ring colors to be white, except in locations as noted on plans.
- I. Devices with dimming control outputs can control 0-10VDC dimmable fixtures by sinking up to 20 mA of current.
- J. Devices shall have mechanical push-buttons that provide tactile and LED user feedback. Push-buttons must be provided with custom button labeling kits. Coordinate switch labeling with owner and A/E team. Labeling to correspond with final room name and numbering.
- K. In order to reduce the number of devices, in rooms with more than two switchlegs, graphic wall stations will be permitted. Graphic wall station locations must be approved during shop drawings.
 - 1. Device shall have a 3.5" full color touch screen for selecting up to 8 programmable lighting control presets or acting as up to 16 on/off/dim control switches.
 - 2. Device shall enable configuration of lighting presets, switched and dimmed, via password-protected setup screens.
 - 3. Device shall enable user supplied .JPG screen saver image to be uploaded.
 - 4. Device shall surface mount to a single gang switch box.
 - 5. Device shall have a micro-USB style connector for local computer connectivity.
 - 6. Device shall have two RJ-45 ports for communication.

2.2. PHOTOCCELL FOR LIGHTING CONTROLLER

- A. The photocell shall mount to standard 1/2 inch conduit opening. Locate exterior sensors as indicated on drawings.
- B. Photocell shall provide for an on/off set-point and a deadband to prevent artificial light from cycling. Delay shall be incorporated into the photocell to prevent rapid response to passing clouds.
- C. Photocell set-point and deadband shall be automatically calibrated through the sensor's micro-processor by initiating an "automatic set-point programming" procedure.
- D. Deadband setting shall be verified and modified by the sensor automatically every time the lights cycle to accommodate physical changes in the space.
- E. Photocell shall be equipped with an automatic override for 100 hour burn-in of lamps. This feature must be available at any time for lamp replacements.

2.3. NETWORKED SYSTEM POWER (RELAY) PACKS

- A. Power pack shall incorporate one or more class 1 relays and contribute low voltage power to the rest of the system. Secondary packs shall incorporate the relay(s), shall have an optional 2nd relay and 0-10VDC dimming output, but shall not be required to contribute system power. Power supplies shall provide system power only, but are not required to switch line voltage circuits. Auxiliary relay packs shall switch low voltage circuits only.
- B. Power packs shall accept 120 or 277 VAC, be plenum rated, and provide Class 2 power to the system.
- C. All devices shall have two RJ-45 ports.
- D. Every power pack parameter shall be available and configurable.

1. For rooms connected to the backbone, parameters shall be remotely from the software and locally via the device push-button.
 2. For stand-alone rooms, parameters shall be configurable locally via the device push-button.
- E. Power pack must install inside standard electrical enclosure and provide UL recognized support to junction box. All class 1 wiring is to pass through chase nipple into adjacent junction box without any exposure of wire leads.
- F. Power (secondary) packs shall be available that provide up to 16 amps switching of all lighting load types.
- G. Power (secondary) packs shall be available that provide up to 5 amps switching of all load types as well as 0-10 VDC dimming of LED drivers.
- H. Specific secondary packs shall be available that require a manual switch signal (via a networked wall station) in order to close its relay.

2.4. OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. General:

1. Install all occupancy sensors in accord with manufacturer's recommendations.
2. The contractor and manufacturer shall select units with the required contact voltage and current ratings as required for the lighting load the sensor is to control, taking into account the nature of the load-i.e.-incandescent, inductive, etc.
3. In addition, select sensors to cover the physical area in which they are to be installed. This might mean using large area units or multiple units in a given space. When necessary, provide interconnecting wiring between units, relays and manufacturer's control units where required. These accessories are not shown or specified but shall be provided where the physical conditions of the room or the electrical requirements of the load so necessitate.
4. Make all adjustments for each occupancy sensor for light level, sensitivity and time delay in coordination with and to suit the needs and requirements of the owner. Tilt and adjust adjustable units for maximum coverage.
5. For all units but especially for non-standard room shapes, such as in the case of long narrow rooms or hallways, select units with the appropriate field of view, standard or long range lenses, wide angle lenses, linear coverage, etc., all as required to suit the application.
6. Coordinate the exact locations and mounting heights of adjustable wall units with the conditions on the wall, with other devices and equipment on the wall and with manufacturer's recommendations. For ceiling mounted units, coordinate with other ceiling mounted equipment and with reflected ceiling plans.
7. Provide all power packs, conduit, conductors, boxes, etc. as necessary for a complete occupancy sensor installation.
8. Provide interconnecting wiring between occupancy sensors, where multiple occupancy sensors are to be provided in the same room to only allow room lighting to be turned off when all occupancy sensors indicate the room to be unoccupied.

B. Networked system occupancy sensors

1. Occupancy sensors system shall sense the presence of human activity within the desired space and fully control the on/off function of the lights.
2. Sensors shall be available with zero, one, or two integrated Class 1 switching relays, and up to one 0-10VDC dimming output. Sensors shall be capable of switching 120/277 VAC. Load ratings shall be 800W @ 120VAC, 1200W @ 277 VAC, and ¼ HP motor. Relays shall be dry contacts.
3. Sensors shall be available with one or two occupancy “poles”, each of which provides a programmable time delay.
4. Sensors shall be available in multiple lens options which are customized for specific applications.
5. Communication and Class 2 low voltage power shall be delivered to each device via standard CAT-5 low voltage cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
6. All sensors shall have two RJ-45 ports or be capable of utilizing a splitter.
7. All sensors shall have the ability to detect when it is not receiving valid communication (via CAT-5 connections) and blink its LED in a pattern to visually indicate of a potential wiring issue.
8. Every sensor parameter shall be available and configurable.
 - a. For rooms connected to the backbone, parameters shall be configurable remotely from the software or locally via the device push-button.
 - b. For stand-alone rooms, parameters shall be configurable locally via the device push-button.
9. Sensors shall be able to function together with other sensors in order to provide expanded coverage areas by simply daisy-chain wiring the units together with CAT-5 cabling.
10. Sensors shall be equipped with an automatic override for 100 hour burn-in of lamps. This feature must be available at any time for lamp replacements.
11. Wall switch sensors shall fit a standard single-gang GFI opening.
12. Wall switch sensors must meet NEC grounding requirements by providing a dedicated ground connection and grounding to a mounting strap. Line and load wire connections shall be interchangeable. Sensor shall not allow current to pass to the load when sensor is in the unoccupied (off) condition.
13. Sensors with dimming can control 0-10 VDC dimmable fixtures by sinking up to 20 mA of Class 2 current.

C. Wall Switch Replacement Occupancy Sensor Dual-Technology Type

1. Wall unit, suitable for mounting to a standard outlet box, employing passive infrared and ultrasonic or microphonic technology, suitable for 120/277 volt operation, suitable for use with electronic ballasts, possessing immunity to EMI and RFI, detects movement over 2000 square foot with a 180 degree line-of-sight coverage, adjustments for time delay and sensitivity; and containing an “auto-off-on” switch. Standard color to be white.

D. Wall/Ceiling mounted occupancy sensor type A:

1. Adjustable aiming wall bracket type, suitable for mounting to a standard outlet box, employing dual ultrasonic or microphonic and passive infrared technology, suitable for 120/277 volt operation, suitable for use with electronic ballasts, possessing immunity to EMI and RFI, 180 degree coverage, coverage square footage as required, adjustments for light level, time delay and sensitivity. Color to be white. Unit shall also be suitable for use as an adjustable bracket ceiling mount type.

E. Ceiling mounted occupancy sensor type B:

1. Ceiling type, suitable for mounting to a standard outlet box, employing passive infrared technology, 360 degree coverage, suitable for 120/277-volt operation, suitable for use with electronic ballasts, possessing immunity to EMI and RFI, adjustments for light level, time delay and sensitivity. Provide white units. Manufacturer to select angle coverage, range, number of sensing sides and other necessary parameters to suit the conditions and size of the space.
- F. Ceiling mounted occupancy sensor type C:
1. Ceiling type, suitable for mounting to a standard outlet box, employing ultrasonic or microphonic technology, suitable for 120/277 volt operation, suitable for use with electronic ballasts, possessing immunity to EMI and RFI, 360 degree coverage, coverage square footage as required, adjustments for light level, time delay and sensitivity. Color to be white.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. GENERAL INSTALLATION

- A. Support lighting controls cabling according to Section 271100.
- B. Install all equipment in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions unless noted otherwise.
- C. All spaces shall be programmed according to schedules included in the drawings.
- D. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.

3.2. IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Division 26 Section "Electrical Identification."
 1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
 2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.
- B. Label contactors with a unique designation.

3.3. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Calibration of Lighting Controls: Prior to Final Acceptance/ Punch, contractor shall provide Functional Testing and Calibration of all Lighting Controls and Lighting Control Systems as required in this specification.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports for each lighting control area or room. Reports shall include all information for each type of control device or system as outlined in **Testing, Adjusting and Calibration of Lighting Control Devices and Systems** below. Provide three (3) copies of all records and reports to A/E prior to date of Final Acceptance Punch List site visit. Records shall be bound in three (3) ring binders and properly labeled, dated and identified for project. Provide tabulation separations to identify different systems (i.e. building interior vs. exterior or theatre) and devices. Provide Table of Content as first sheet.

3.4. TESTING, ADJUSTING AND CALIBRATION OF LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEMS

- A. Perform Manufacturer's Power-Up and Installation checklist. At a minimum include:
 - 1. Inspection of all terminations for tightness.
 - 2. Check all wiring for completeness.
 - 3. Inspect all low and line voltage wires and cap unused wires.
 - 4. Apply power.
 - 5. Confirm system functions.
 - 6. Programming is complete, according to schedules in drawing.
- B. Verify override switch operation and time-out of override, per schedules on drawings.
- C. Verify 24 hours OFF/ON settings are functioning.
- D. Verify photocell controlled luminaire(s) are ON at dusk and OFF at Dawn or Time Set as determined by Owner and A/E.
- E. Troubleshoot and correct all deficiencies.

3.5. TESTING, ADJUSTING AND CALIBRATION OF LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

- A. Occupancy Sensors:
 - 1. Record location, quantity, and model number of sensor(s) and verify application.
 - 2. Verify location and quantity of sensor(s) is optimal for room.
 - 3. Perform "walk" mode test to adjust the following:
 - a. Ultrasonic/microphonic range
 - b. Infrared range
 - c. Sensitivity – unit should activate within 2-3 seconds of entry for automatic on spaces. Unit should not de-activate when space is occupied, especially in corners. Unit should not "nuisance" activate due to occupants outside space.
- B. Wall switches
 - 1. Record location, quantity, and model number of switch(es) and verify operation.
 - 2. Operate each switch and verify the controlled luminaire(s) correspond with the plan.
- C. Troubleshoot and correct all deficiencies.
- D. Record all data. Sign and date performance record. Record shall include:
 - 1. Location (room #)
 - 2. Time
 - 3. Date
 - 4. Performed by
 - 5. Settings
 - 6. Written verification that all procedures required above and required by manufacturer have been performed.

3.6. DEMONSTRATION/TRAINING

- A. Coordinate demonstration of products specified in this Section with A/E and Owner.
- B. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to start up system and train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices. Training sessions shall be videotaped and given to the Owner on CD/DVD. Schedule training at least two weeks in advance. Notify both A/E and Owner of training dates.

- C. Within the first year after final acceptance/substantial completion, provide 1 day (8 hours) to allow for a site visit from a factory-authorized service representative to adjust programming, graphics, schedules, and re-train Owner's personnel as required.

3.7. WARRANTY

- A. General. The contractor warrants that all work provided under the contract will be in conformance with the contract and free from defects in workmanship, materials and equipment for a period of one (2) year or such longer periods may be specified in the contract documents, except as provided below. Warranty time periods shall commence from the date of Owner acceptance of the whole, or any part of the project.
- B. Latent Defects. On demand by the Owner, at any time within the one (1) year period following substantial completion or final acceptance, if applicable, the Contractor shall promptly repair or replace all defective or non-conforming work resulting from, or constituting, latent defects, fraud, fraudulent concealment or gross negligence. The Owner and/or A/E will give timely notice of such defects.
- C. Prompt Repair. Upon notice from Owner of such defects or non-conforming work, the Contractor shall promptly visit the site within 48 hours in the company of a building representative, and shall provide all labor, material and equipment to promptly repair or replace the defective or non-conforming work. The repair shall include all adjacent work not necessarily provided by the Contractor but damaged as a result of such defects or non-conforming work, Owner may repair or replace such work and charge the cost thereof to the Contractor. Work which is repaired or replaced by the Contractor shall be inspected and shall be warranted by the Contractor in accordance with this Article. The warranties set forth herein are in addition to all warranties or guarantees expressed or implied by operation of law, statute or ordinance.
- D. Commercial Warranties. The Contractor shall deliver all commercial warranties received from manufacturers to the A/E prior to final completion but this shall not reduce Contractor's obligations under this article.

END 26 0926

1. GENERAL

1.1. SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Base Bid: Contractor shall provide:
 - 1. Lighting and appliance branch circuit panelboards.

1.2. REFERENCES

- A. NEMA AB 1 - Molded Case Circuit Breakers.
- B. NEMA ICS 2 - Industrial Control Devices, Controllers, and Assemblies.
- C. NEMA KS 1 - Enclosed Switches.
- D. NEMA PB 1 - Panelboards.
- E. NEMA PB 1.1 - Instructions for Safe Installation, Operation and Maintenance of Panelboards Rated 600 Volts or Less.
- F. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- G. Section 260529 – Supporting Devices.
- H. Section 260553 – Identification.
- I. Section 260800 – Testing.

1.3. SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit Shop Drawings: Indicate outline and support point dimensions, voltage, main bus ampacity, short circuit ampere rating, circuit breaker and fusible switch arrangement and sizes.
- B. Submit Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by Product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, installation, and starting of Product.

1.4. PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Submit actual locations of Products; indicate actual branch circuit arrangement.

1.5. OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

- A. Submit Maintenance Data: Include spare parts data listing; source and current prices of replacement parts and supplies; and recommended maintenance procedures and intervals.

1.6. QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.7. REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Furnish products listed and classified by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) as suitable for purpose specified and indicated.

1.8. FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. General Electric.
- B. Square D.
- C. Siemens.
- D. Cutler Hammer.

2.2. BRANCH CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Lighting and Appliance Branch Circuit Panelboards: NEMA PBI, circuit breaker type.
- B. Panelboard Bus: Copper, ratings as indicated. Provide copper ground bus in each panelboard.
- C. The fault current information presented on the drawings is the available balanced three phase fault current. Provide breakers with next higher standard rating.
- D. Molded Case Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, bolt-on type thermal magnetic trip circuit breakers, with common trip handle for all poles. Provide circuit breakers UL listed as Type SWD for lighting circuits. Provide UL Class A ground fault interrupter circuit breakers where scheduled. Series rating of circuit breakers to achieve the same level of fault protection indicated on the drawings shall **not** be acceptable. Do not use tandem circuit breakers.
- E. Shunt Trip Circuit breakers shall have 120 VAC coils.
- F. Enclosure: NEMA PB 1, as indicated on the drawings.
- G. Cabinet box: 6 inches (153 mm) deep; width: 20 inches (508mm)
- H. Cabinet Front: Flush or recessed as indicated on the drawings. Finish in manufacturer's standard gray. Provide manufacturer's standard lock with two keys per panel board.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. INSTALLATION

- A. Install panelboards plumb in conformance with NEMA PB 1.1. Install recessed panelboards flush with wall finishes. Provide supports in accordance with Section 26 05 29.

- B. Height: 6 ft to top of panelboard, install panelboards taller than 6 ft with bottom no more than 4 inches above floor.
- C. Provide filler plates for unused spaces in panelboards.
- D. Provide typed circuit directory for each branch circuit panelboard. Revise directory to reflect circuiting changes required to balance phase loads.
- E. Provide engraved plastic nameplates under the provisions of section 26 08 00.
- F. Provide two of each panelboard key.
- G. Provide (10) 3/4 inch spare conduits within flush mounted panels. Extend conduits to above ceiling line. Turn conduits out of full height walls. Seal conduit penetrations in fire rated walls.

3.2. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Measure steady state load currents at each panelboard feeder. Should the difference at any panelboard between phases exceed 20 percent, rearrange circuits in the panelboard to balance the phase loads within 20 percent. Take care to maintain proper phasing for multi-wire branch circuits.
- B. Visual and Mechanical Inspection: Inspect for physical damage, proper alignment, anchorage, and grounding. Check proper installation and tightness of connections for circuit breakers, fusible switches, and fuses.

END 26 2416

1. GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDES

- A. Base Bid:
 - 1. Contractor shall provide:
 - a. Relays in a box (RIB)
 - b. Enclosed relays..

1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Division 1 – Submittal Requirements.
- B. Section 260529 - Supporting Devices.
- C. Section 260553 - Electrical Identification.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/NEMA ICS 6 - Enclosures for Industrial Controls and Systems.
- B. ANSI/UL 198E - Class R Fuses.
- C. FS W-F-870 - Fuse holders (For Plug and Enclosed Cartridge Fuses).
- D. FS W-S-865 - Switch, Box, (Enclosed), Surface-Mounted.
- E. NEMA ICS 2 - Industrial Control Devices, Controllers, and Assemblies.
- F. NEMA KS 1 - Enclosed Switches.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section Division 1.
- B. Provide product data on motor starters and combination motor starters, relays, pilot devices, and switching and overcurrent protective devices.
- C. Submit operation, maintenance data and recommended maintenance procedures and intervals.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store in a clean, dry space. Maintain factory wrapping or provide an additional heavy canvas or heavy plastic cover to protect units from dirt, water, construction debris, and traffic.
- B. Handle in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Lift only with lugs provided for the purpose. Handle carefully to avoid damage to motor control components, enclosure, and finish.

1.6 OPERATION & MAINTENANCE DATA

- A. Submit per Division 1.
- B. Maintenance data: Include spare parts data listing; source and current prices of replacement parts and supplies. Also include trouble shooting guidelines.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS - RELAYS

- A. Allen-Bradley
- B. Square D
- C. General Electric

2.2 RELAYS

- A. NEMA Control Relay:
 - 1. Control Voltage: 120V – 60Hz
 - 2. Contacts: 4 N.O. contacts
 - 3. Terminations: Screw terminations
 - 4. Contact Rating: 20A
 - 5. Open type DIN Rail Mount

3. EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install relays in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Mount relays within (1) hinged cover enclosure, sized as indicated on the drawings.

END 26 2420

1. GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDES

- A. Base Bid: Contractor shall provide:
 - 1. Wall switches.
 - 2. Receptacles.
 - 3. Device plates and decorative box covers.
 - 4. In-use cover plates.
 - 5. Recessed activation floor boxes

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. NECA - Standard of Installation.
- B. NEMA WD 1 - General Requirements for Wiring Devices.
- C. NEMA WD 6 - Wiring Device -- Dimensional Requirements.
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 33 00.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturers' catalog information showing dimensions, colors, and configurations.
- C. Submit manufacturers' installation instructions.

1.4 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum 3 years experience.

1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Provide Products listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., or other testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1 WALL SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Hubbell: 1221 (SP), 1223 (3-way), 1224 (4-way)
 - 2. Arrow Hart: 1991 (SP), 1993 (3-way), 1994 (4-way).
 - 3. Leviton: 1221-2 (SP), 1223-2 (3-way), 1224-2 (4-way).

- B. Description: NEMA WD 1, heavy-duty AC only general-use snap switch. Provide device suitable for use with stranded wire.
- C. Device Body: White plastic with toggle handle.
- D. Voltage Rating: 120-277 volts, AC.
- E. Current Rating: 20 amperes.

2.2 Low voltage switch shall be a 2 position momentary switch. Switch shall match other wall switches on project.

2.3 RECEPTACLES

A. Duplex Convenience Receptacle:

- 1. Hubbell 5362I.
- 2. Arrow Hart 5362I.
- 3. Leviton 5362I.

B. Description: NEMA WD 1; heavy-duty general-use receptacle. Provide device suitable for use with stranded conductors.

C. Device Body: White plastic.

D. Convenience Receptacle: NEMA Type 5-20R.

E. GFCI Receptacle: Convenience receptacle with integral ground fault circuit interrupter to meet regulatory requirements: Hubbell GF5362I, Arrow Hart GF5342, and Leviton 6899.

2.4 WALL PLATES

A. Manufacturers:

- 1. Hubbell.
- 2. Arrow Hart.
- 3. Leviton.

B. Flush Mounted Plates: Nylon beveled type with smooth rolled outer edge, white colored.

C. Weatherproof Cover Plate: Gasketed cast metal with hinged gasketed device cover.

2.5 IN-USE COVERPLATE

A. NEMA 3R, hinged aluminum cover with provisions for locking, listed as weatherproof with cord attached to the receptacle, meeting NEC 2002, 406.8(b).

3. EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that outlet boxes are installed at proper height.
- B. Verify that wall openings are neatly cut and will be completely covered by wall plates.
- C. Verify that boxes are adjusted properly.

- D. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to wiring devices.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide extension rings to bring outlet boxes flush with finished surface.
- B. Clean debris from outlet boxes.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with NECA "Standard of Installation."
- B. Install devices plumb and level.
- C. Install switches with OFF position down.
- D. Install receptacles with grounding pole on bottom.
- E. Connect wiring device grounding terminal to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor per NEC.
- F. Install decorative plates on switch, receptacle, and blank outlets in finished areas.
- G. Connect wiring devices by wrapping conductor around screw terminal. Specification or hospital grade heavy duty screw clamps may be used. Do not wire through devices.
- H. Use jumbo size plates for outlets installed in masonry walls.
- I. Install galvanized steel plates on outlet boxes and junction boxes in unfinished areas, above accessible ceilings, and on surface mounted outlets.

3.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 26 05 33 to obtain mounting heights specified and indicated on drawings.
- B. Install wall switch or dimmer at 48 inches above finished floor to top of box.
- C. Install convenience receptacle 18 inches above finished floor to center of box unless indicated otherwise.
- D. Install convenience receptacle 6 inches above counter or backsplash of counter.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each wiring device for defects.
- B. Operate each wall switch with circuit energized and verify proper operation.
- C. Verify that each receptacle device is energized.
- D. Test each receptacle device for proper polarity.
- E. Test each GFCI receptacle device for proper operation.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust devices and wall plates to be flush and level.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces to remove splatters and restore finish.

END 26 2726

1. GENERAL

1.1. SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Base Bid: Contractor shall provide:
 - 1. Fusible switches.
 - 2. Non-fusible switches.
 - 3. Fuses.

1.2. REFERENCES

- A. NEMA KS 1 - Enclosed Switches.
- B. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- C. UL 198C - High-Interrupting Capacity Fuses; Current Limiting Type.
- D. UL 198E - Class R Fuses.
- E. UL 198 - Class J Fuses.

1.3. SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit Product Data: Provide switch ratings and enclosure dimensions.
- B. Submit Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by Product testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, installation, and starting of Product.

1.4. QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing Products specified in this Section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.5. REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Furnish products listed and classified by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) as suitable for purpose specified and shown.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. MANUFACTURERS

- A. General Electric.
- B. Square-D.
- C. Siemens.

D. Cutler Hammer

2.2. ENCLOSED SWITCHES

- A. Fusible Switch Assemblies: NEMA KS 1, Type HD load interrupter enclosed knife switch with externally operable handle interlocked to prevent opening front cover with switch in ON position. Handle lockable in OFF position. Fuse clips: Designed to accommodate Class R fuses, Class L and Class J in main switchboards. Provide an equipment grounding kit.
- B. Non-fusible Switch Assemblies: NEMA KS 1, Type HD load interrupter enclosed knife switch with externally operable handle interlocked to prevent opening front cover with switch in ON position. Handle lockable in OFF position. Provide an equipment grounding kit.
- C. Enclosures: NEMA KS 1.
 - 1. Interior Dry Locations: Type 1.
 - 2. Exterior Locations: Type 3R.

2.3. FUSES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Bussman.
 - 2. Gould/Shawmut.
 - 3. Littlefuse.
- B. Description: Dual element, current limiting, one-time fuse, 250 or 600 volt, UL 198E, Class RK 1, Class J and Class L.
- C. Interrupting Rating: 200,000 RMS amperes.
- D. Provide three (3) spare fuses of each fuse type and size.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. INSTALLATION

- A. Install disconnect switches where indicated.
- B. Install fuses in fusible disconnect switches.
- C. Provide adhesive label on inside door of each switch indicating UL fuse class and size for replacement.
- D. Provide label on front of all enclosures as specified in 26 05 53.

END 26 2816

1. GENERAL

1.1. SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Base Bid: Contractor shall provide:
 - 1. Power wiring to starter when provided as integral part of equipment specified, to motor when starter is provided in the Electrical Work.
 - 2. Starters specified and shown on electrical drawings.
 - 3. Disconnects required in accord with NEC.
 - 4. Control and interlock wiring specified and shown on electrical drawings.

1.2. REFERENCES

- A. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- B. UL 198C - High-Interrupting Capacity Fuses; Current Limiting Type.
- C. UL 198E - Class R Fuses.
- D. NEMA AB 1 - Molded Case Circuit Breakers.
- E. NEMA ICS 2 - Industrial Control Devices, Controllers, and Assemblies.
- F. NEMA ICS 6 - Enclosures for Industrial Controls and Systems.
- G. NEMA KS 1 - Enclosed Switches.

1.3. SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit Product Data: Provide catalog sheets showing voltage, controller size, ratings and size of switching and overcurrent protective devices, short circuit ratings, dimensions, and enclosure details. For each motor indicated on the plans, indicate motor to be fed by starter on submittal.
- B. Submit Test Reports: Indicate field test and inspection procedures and test results.
- C. Submit Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by Product testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, installation, and starting of Product.

1.4. QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with NEC 'workmanlike' manner.

1.5. QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.6. REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.

- B. Furnish products listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. as suitable for purpose specified and indicated.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. MANUFACTURERS

- A. Square D.
- B. G.E.
- C. Siemens.
- D. Cutler-Hammer

2.2. MANUAL CONTROLLERS

- A. Fractional Horsepower Manual Controller (MMC): NEMA ICS 2, AC general-purpose Class A manually operated, full-voltage controller for fractional horsepower induction motors, with thermal overload unit, red pilot light, and toggle operator. Provide N.O. auxiliary contact. Mount at 48" A.F.F. unless noted otherwise.
- B. Motor Starting Switch (MS): NEMA ICS 2, AC general-purpose Class A manually operated, full-voltage controller for fractional horsepower induction motors, without thermal overload unit, with red pilot light and toggle operator. Provide N.O. auxiliary contact. Mount at 48" A.F.F. unless noted otherwise.
- C. Enclosure: NEMA ICS 6; Type 1. Provide mechanism for lock-off position.

2.3. AUTOMATIC CONTROLLERS

- A. Magnetic Motor Controllers: NEMA ICS 2, AC general-purpose Class A magnetic controller for induction motors rated in horsepower.
- B. Where a magnetic motor controller and disconnect are indicated at the unit provide a combination starter. All combination starter units shall utilize fusible switches. Fusible switches shall be quick make, quick break and shall accept Class R dimension fuses.
- C. Overload Relays: The overload relay assembly shall be of the thermal bimetallic type. Overload relays shall be reset from outside the enclosure by means of an insulated button. The overload relay shall have a built-in push-to-test button. Fractional Horsepower Controllers (FHC) shall not require overload relays for motors that are internally protected.
- D. Enclosure: NEMA ICS 6, Type 1.
- E. Where relays are indicated for control of fractional horsepower motors (FHC). Relays shall have 120 V coils with SPST contacts rated for 20 amps. The relay shall be mounted in a Nema-1 enclosure.

2.4. PRODUCT OPTIONS AND FEATURES

- A. Auxiliary Contacts: NEMA ICS 2, rated 10A at 600 V AC. Each automatic controller shall have one normally open and one normally closed auxiliary contact.

- B. Cover Mounted Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 2, standard duty type.
- C. Pilot Device Contacts: NEMA ICS 2, Form Z, rated 10A at 600V AC.
- D. Push buttons: Covered type.
- E. Indicating Lights: Transformer type. Provide green "Run" for all starters.
- F. Selector Switches: Provide rotary type hand-off-auto switches for all starters.
- G. Relays: NEMA ICS 2, 120 V.
- H. Control Power Transformers: Each motor control unit shall be provided with a 120-volt secondary, 240-volt primary control power transformer, sized as recommended by the supplier. Overcurrent protection shall be provided on primary and secondary of transformer.

2.5. DISCONNECTS

- A. Combination Controllers: Combine motor controllers with fusible switch disconnect in common enclosure.
- B. Non-fusible Switch Assemblies: NEMA KS 1, enclosed knife switch with externally operable handle.
- C. Where it is indicated in the Electrical Work to provide a combination starter and disconnect at the unit, a combination controller shall be provided.

2.6. FUSES

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Bussman.
 - 2. Shawmut.
 - 3. Littlefuse.
- B. Description: Dual element, current limiting, one-time fuse, 250 or 600 volt, UL 198E, Class RK.
- C. Interrupting Rating: 200,000 RMS amperes.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. INSTALLATION

- A. Install enclosed controllers where indicated, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install enclosed controllers plumb. Provide supports in accordance with Section 260529
- C. Height: 5 ft to operating handle.
- D. Install fuses in fusible switches.
- E. Select and install overload heater elements in motor controllers to match installed motor characteristics.
- F. Provide engraved plastic nameplates under the provisions of Section 26 05 53.

- G. Provide neatly typed label inside each motor controller door identifying motor served, nameplate horsepower, full load amperes, code letter, service factor, and voltage/phase rating.

3.2. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect and test each enclosed controller for correct operation including safeties, limits and remote/automatic controls. Correct deficiencies and re-test for satisfactory operation.

END 26 2913

1. GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDES

A. Base Bid:

1. Contractor shall provide:
 - a. Fusible switches.
 - b. Nonfusible switches.
 - c. Enclosures.

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 2. Current and voltage ratings.
 3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
 4. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
 5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
 6. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper.
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Manufacturer's field service report.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.

2. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2010 m).

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Accessories:
 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 4. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
 5. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.2 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Double Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
1. Manual transfer switch duty.
- D. Accessories:
1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 3. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.3 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
 3. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 4. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
 5. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, Type 7.

3. EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- C. Install fuses in fusible devices.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed switch and circuit breaker, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- B. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies enclosed switches and circuit breakers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

END 26 2816

1. GENERAL

1.1. SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Base Bid: Contractor shall provide:
 - 1. Luminaires and accessories.
 - 2. Lamps
 - 3. Luminaire accessories.
 - 4. Seismic restraint.
 - 5. Exit Lights.

1.2. REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- B. ANSI/NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code.
- C. NEMA WD 6 - Wiring Devices-Dimensional Requirements.
- D. Section 26 05 33 – Boxes.
- E. Section 26 05 29 – Supporting Devices.

1.3. SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensions and components for each luminaire that is not a standard product of the manufacturer.
- B. Submit Product Data: Provide dimensions, ratings, and performance data.
- C. Submit Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements.
- D. Manufacturer's Instructions: Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.
- E. Submit warranties.

1.4. OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

- A. Submit Maintenance Data: Include replacement parts list.

1.5. QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing products specified in this Section with minimum three years documented experience.

1.6. REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements of ANSI/NFPA 70.

- B. Conform to requirements of NFPA 101.
- C. Furnish products listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. as suitable for purpose specified and shown.

1.7. DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect and handle products to site under provisions of the general conditions.
- B. Maintain factory wrapping until fixture is installed to avoid damage during transportation to installment point.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. LUMINAIRES

- A. Furnish products as specified in schedule on Drawings and/or in Specifications.
- B. Install ballasts and specified accessories at factory.

1.1 LED DRIVERS

- A. LED Driver
 - 1. UL listed.
 - 2. Minimum 0.9 power factor.
 - 3. Less than 20% THD.
 - 4. Minimum 9kV surge suppression protection.
 - 5. Voltage: match luminaire voltage.

2.2. EXIT LIGHTS

- A. Provide LED type exit lights as indicated on the drawings.

2.3. LAMPS

- A. LED lamps
 - 1. Color temperature (per fixture): Binning shall be +/- 50K from specified fixture color temperature. Provide color temperature as indicated in luminaire schedule.
 - 2. Minimum 80 CRI.
 - 3. Standard(s) LM79 and LM80 compliant.
 - 4. Alternate lumen outputs to those specified on the drawings will not be considered.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrate and supporting grids for luminaires.
- B. Examine each luminaire to determine suitability for lamps specified.

3.2. INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturers instructions.
- B. Support luminaires larger than 2 x 4 foot size independent of ceiling framing with minimum of (2) #9 wires anchored to building structure at opposite corners of the light fixture.
- C. Install surface mounted luminaires plumb and adjust to align with building lines and with each other. Secure to prohibit movement. Install luminaires per IBC 2003 seismic requirements.
- D. Exposed Grid Ceilings: Support surface mounted luminaires on grid ceiling directly from building structure. Install luminaires per IBC 2009 seismic requirements.
- E. Install wall mounted luminaires at height as indicated on Drawings or as directed by Architect/Engineer.
- F. Install accessories furnished with each luminaire.
- G. Connect luminaires and exit signs to branch circuit outlets provided under Section 26 05 33 using flexible metallic conduit.
- H. Make wiring connections to branch circuit using building wire with insulation suitable for temperature conditions within luminaire.
- I. Bond products and metal accessories to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
- J. Install specified lamps in each luminaire.

3.3. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Operate each luminaire after installation and connection. Inspect for proper connection and operation.

3.4. ADJUSTING

- A. Aim and adjust luminaires as indicated on Drawings as directed.
- B. Re-lamp luminaires that have failed lamps at Substantial Completion.

3.5. CLEANING

- A. Clean electrical parts to remove conductive and deleterious materials.
- B. Remove dirt and debris from enclosure.
- C. Clean photometric control surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Clean finishes and touch up damage.

END 26 5100

1. GENERAL

1.1. WORK INCLUDES

- A. Base Bid and Alternate Bid No. 6, Contractor shall provide:
1. Category 5e and 6 cabling (as indicated on the drawings).
 2. Category 5e and 6 connectors (jacks) and patch cords.
 3. Fiber optic connectors and patch cords.
 4. Fiber optic termination cabinets and adapter panels.
 5. Wall-mounted racks by owner.
 6. Water-resistant coverplate.
 7. Testing and labeling of all cabling.
 8. Cabling System Warranty.

1.2. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions apply to this Section.
- B. Design Criteria: The structured wiring system shall be comprised of horizontal copper and backbone fiber optic cables routed throughout the building. This system shall provide transmission media for voice and data signals. The contractor shall provide structured wiring transmission media, components, and testing as specified herein at locations shown on the plans and in conformance with manufacturers' recommendations.

1.3. SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following types of control and signal transmission media:
1. UTP Copper, 4-pair CAT-5e.
 2. UTP Copper, 4-pair CAT-6.
 3. Optical Fiber, 8-strand multimode OM3 and single mode OS2.
- B. This Section includes the patch panels, connectors, patch cords, outlets, terminal blocks, etc. as required to provide a complete structured system. Documentation is critical to the successful installation of the structured wiring system. Unless agreed to in writing the systems shall be documented as specified herein or shown on the drawings.
- C. Installation shall conform to the latest edition of NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code (NEC), Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA), Building Industry Consulting Services International (BICSI), Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (TDMM), local codes and ordinances, as applicable.
- D. In addition, Installation shall conform to the latest edition of the following Codes and Standards:
1. ANSI/TIA 568-C.1 Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard.
 2. ANSI/TIA 568-C.2, Balanced Twisted-Pair Cabling and Components.
 3. ANSI/TIA 568-C.3, Optical Fiber Cabling Components.
 4. ANSI/TIA 569-C, Commercial Building Standards For Telecommunications Pathways And Spaces

5. ANSI/TIA 606-B The Administration Standard For The Telecommunications Infrastructure Of Commercial Building
 6. ANSI/TIA 607-B, Commercial Building Grounding and Bonding Requirements.
 7. ANSI/TIA 862-A, Building Automation Systems Cabling Standard.
 8. ASTM D 4566-05, Standard Test Methods for Electrical Performance Properties of Insulations and Jackets for Telecommunications Wire and Cable, 2005
 9. BICSI Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual (TDMM) 13th Edition
 10. BICSI Information Transport Installation Manual (ITSM)
 11. ISO/IEC 11801 – Information Technology – Generic Cabling for Customer Premise
 12. IEEE 802.3 Standard for Information technology -Telecommunications and information exchange between systems - Local and metropolitan area networks – Specific requirements Part 3: Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detection (CSMA/CD) Access Method and Physical Layer Specifications
 13. IEC 61156-1, Multicore and Symmetrical Pair/Quad Cables for Digital Communications – Part 1: Generic Specification, 2005
 14. Federal Communications Commission Part 15 and Part 68
 15. UL 444 – Standard for Safety of Communications Cable
 16. UL 1666 – Standard for Safety of Flame Propagation Height
 17. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code, 2014 edition.
 18. NFPA 262 – Flame Travel and Smoke of Wires and Cables
 19. Local Authority Having Jurisdiction
- E. All cabling shall be installed in J-Hooks except where exposed, where it should be installed in conduit. Contractor to provide all required J-Hooks, all raceways, and painting of raceways.

1.4. SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following according to the Conditions of the Contract.
1. Product data for structured wiring transmission media and components.
- B. Qualification data for firms and persons specified in “Quality Assurance” article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include list of completed projects with project names, addresses, names of engineers and Owners, and other information specified.
- C. Test plan, Test Procedure and Test Reports: Indicate testing methods, testing device calibration, and interpretations of test results for Field Acceptance Tests. Progress payments shall depend on the successful completion of testing and documentation. Provide for review and approval of the engineer a test plan for media testing. Deliver the test plan at least 14 days prior to the scheduled start of the first test. The test plan shall detail the objectives of all tests. The tests shall clearly demonstrate that the media and its components fully comply with the requirements specified herein.
- D. The test procedures shall contain at a minimum the following elements:
1. A statement of purpose identifying the goals of the test.
 2. The methods used for testing.
 3. Duration and schedule of tests.
 4. Examples of all graphs, tables, and charts necessary for display of testing results.
 5. Certifications and qualifications of all persons conducting testing.
- E. Testing and documentation as specified in Part 3.

1.5. QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. UTP Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer to install Category 6 cabling and connectivity. The installer shall be a member of BICSI and hold a valid RCDD certification. The installer shall also be certified by the proposed cabling supplier.
- B. Installing contractor shall have a minimum of 5 years documented experience in the communications structured cabling business.
- C. Testing Firm's Field Supervisor Qualifications: A person currently certified by the International Electrical Testing Association or National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70 "National Electrical Code" (NEC) for components and installation.
- E. Listing and Labeling: Provide products specified in this Section that are listed and labeled.
 - 1. The Terms "Listed and Labeled": As defined in the "National Electrical Code," Article 100.
 - 2. Listing and Labeling Agency Qualifications: A "Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory" (NRTL) as defined in OSHA Regulation 1910.7.
- F. Single-Source Responsibility: All cable and components of each kind shall be the product of a single manufacturer. Cable and connecting hardware do not need to be manufactured by the same company. All components of, and the entire horizontal copper cabling channel, shall exceed all requirements for ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-C.

1.6. CABLING SYSTEM WARRANTY

- A. Provide a 20-year minimum Cabling System Warranty. The warranty shall guarantee:
 - 1. That each registered permanent link will meet or exceed the performance requirements of the designated permanent link defined in the ANSI/EIA/TIA Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standards listed on the warranty certificate.
 - 2. That each registered permanent link will support all current and all future network applications designed to run on the designated link defined in the Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standards listed on the certificate, including Gigabit Ethernet (1000BaseT) protocols.
 - 3. That all connectivity hardware and cable used in the structured cabling system will be free of defects in material and workmanship under normal handling and use.
 - 4. The Owner shall be instructed and trained to make Moves/Add/Changes without voiding the cabling system warranty.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. MANUFACTURERS PRODUCTS

- A. Cable:
 - 1. UTP Category 6:
 - a. CommScope UltraMedia.
 - b. General Cable GenSPEED 6000.
 - c. Berk-Tek LANMark-1000.

- d. Mohawk AdvanceNet.
- e. Belden 3600 series.
- f. Superior Essex DataGain.

2. Optical Fiber:

- a. Corning.
- b. CommScope.
- c. General Cable.
- d. Berk-Tek.
- e. Mohawk.
- f. Belden.

B. Terminating Equipment: Patch panels, wall jacks and cover plates.

- 1. Commscope.
- 2. Panduit.
- 3. Leviton
- 4. Siemon.
- 5. Hubbell.
- 6. Ortronics.

C. Patch Cords

- 1. Owner Provided.

2.2. APPLICATION

- A. All media shall be listed for the application, marked and protected as per the NEC. Articles 645, 725, 760, 770, 800 and 820 shall define the power source limitations, installation guidelines, insulation properties, applications and allowable cable substitution schedules. Solid conductor materials shall be substituted for the specified 7-strand conductor materials as required by the NEC. All media substitutions shall conform to the NEC and be approved by the engineer.

2.3. CATEGORY-5e or 6

A. General

- 1. 24AWG, (CAT-5e) or 23AWG (CAT-6) Unshielded Twisted-Pair cables shall meet all the requirements for ANSI TIA/EIA-568-C and support high-speed communication network applications requiring spectral bandwidth that may extend to 250 MHz for applications such as Fast Ethernet, TP-PMD [100 Mbps], high-speed token ring and ATM [155 Mbps], and 100Mb and 1Gb Ethernet applications.

B. Jacket color:

- 1. Horizontal Data (LAN) cables: Purple, Black, or Orange based upon cabling requirement indicated on drawings – see E0.0 and Project General Notes / E4.1 for further information.
- 2. Wireless Access Points (WAP) cables: White.

C. Rating:

- 1. UL-listed Communications Cable Type shall be rated CMP for plenum installation.

- D. Manufacturers Testing: Manufacturer shall verify that final production reels are tested to standard (250 MHZ) and conform to all TIA/EIA and ISO/IEC category 6 requirements.
- E. Field Testing: All cabling and connectors shall comply with and be tested to ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-C for CAT 5e installations for the permanent link and as specified in Part 3.

2.4. OPTICAL FIBER

- A. General: The optical fiber cable construction shall consist of single mode (nominal 9/125 μ m, OS2) and multimode (50 μ m OM3), loose tube cabling for outside plant. These groups and individual fibers shall be identifiable in accordance with ANSI/EIA/TIA-606. These groups are assembled to form a single compact core, which is covered by a protective sheath. The sheath consists of an overall jacket and may contain one or more layers of dielectric material applied over the core.
- B. Characteristics:
 - 1. Each cabled optical fiber shall meet the graded performance specifications. Attenuation shall be measured in accordance with ANSI/TIA-455-46, -53, or B61. Information transmission capacity shall be measured in accordance with ANSI/TIA-455-51 or B30. The cable shall be measured at 23 deg C - 51deg. C.
 - 2. The mechanical and environmental specifications for riser all-dielectric outside optical fiber cable shall be in accordance with ANSI/TIA-472CAAA and for all-dielectric outside optical fiber cable shall be in accordance with ANSI/TIA-472DAAA. The specifications for other constructed indoor optical fiber cable shall be in accordance with ANSI/ICEA S-83-596 and for other constructed outdoor optical fiber cable shall be in accordance with ANSI/ICEA S-83-640.
 - 3. Each cabled optical fiber shall meet the attenuation performance specifications listed in the TIA 568B. Attenuation shall be measured in accordance with ANSI/TIA-455-78A or B61. The cable shall be measured at 23 deg C -51deg. C.
- C. Rating:
 - 1. OSP (Outside Plant) cabling rated for direct-burial (although it will be installed in nonmetallic conduit).
- D. Cable Jacket:
 - 1. The jacket shall be continuous, free from pinholes, splits, blisters, or other imperfections. The jacket shall have a consistent, uniform thickness; jackets extruded under high pressure are not acceptable. The jacket shall be smooth, as is consistent with the best commercial practice. The jacket shall provide the cable with a tough, flexible, protective coating, able to withstand the stresses expected in normal installation and service.
 - 2. For cables with more than two fibers, the cable jacket shall be designed for easy removal without damage to the optical fibers by incorporating a ripcord under each cable jacket.
 - 3. The nominal thickness of the cable outer jacket shall be sufficient to provide adequate cable protection while meeting the mechanical, flammability, and environmental test requirements of this document over the life of the cable.
- E. Identification:
 - 1. The individual fibers shall be color coded for identification. The optical fiber color coding shall be in accordance with TIA-606. The coloring material shall be stable over the temperature range of the cable, shall not be susceptible to migration, and

shall not affect the transmission characteristics of the optical fibers. Color coded buffered fibers shall not adhere to one another. When fibers are grouped into individual units, each unit shall be numbered on the unit jacket for identification. The number shall be repeated at regular intervals.

2. Jacket Printing: The outer jacket shall be marked with the manufacturer's name or UL file number, date of manufacture, fiber type, flame rating, NRTL symbol, and sequential length markings every two feet (e.g. "COMPANY-01/97-62.5/125 MICRON-Type OFN - (UL) 00001 FEET"). The print color shall be black. The printing shall be permanent and legible for the life of the cable.

F. Cable Specifications

1. Temperature Range: The storage temperature range for the cable on the original shipping reel shall be -40 to +70 degrees C. The installation/operating temperature range shall be 0 to +70 degrees C. Testing shall be in accordance with FOTP-3.
2. Crush Resistance: The cable shall withstand a minimum compressive load of 89 N/cm (50 lbf/in) applied uniformly over the length of the compression plate. The cable shall be tested in accordance with FOTP-41; "Compressive Loading Resistance of Fiber Optic Cable". While under compressive load, the fibers shall not experience attenuation greater than 0.6 dB at 1300 nm (multimode). After the compressive load is removed, the fibers shall not experience an attenuation change greater than 0.4 dB at 1300 nm (multimode).
3. Impact Resistance: The cable shall withstand a minimum of 20 impact cycles. The cable shall be tested in accordance with FOTP-25, "Repeated Impact Testing of Fiber Optic Cables and Cable Assemblies" The fibers shall not experience an attenuation change greater than 0.4 dB at 1300 nm (multimode).
4. Cycle Flexing: The cable shall withstand 25 mechanical flexing cycles at a rate of 30 +/- 1 cycles per minute. The cable shall be tested in accordance with FOTP-104, "Fiber Optic Cable Cyclic Flexing Test" The fibers shall not experience an attenuation change greater than 0.4 dB at 1300 nm (multimode).
5. Flammability: All cables shall comply with the requirements of the 2002 NEC, Article 770. Plenum cables (OFNP) shall pass UL-910.

2.5. CONNECTORS:

A. CAT-6 Connectors

1. All outlets and connectors shall be certified to the particular standards, either CAT-5e or CAT-6, component rated.
2. All locations shall utilize a RJ-45 type, 8-position, 8-conductor EIA/TIA T568B data jacks in quantities as required and detailed on drawings.
3. Jacks shall be modular.
4. Color:
 - a. All connectors/jacks shall match the color of their cable.
 - b. Faceplates: to match other wiring devices in room or area (reference 262726).
5. Flush mount faceplates and boxes shall be provided at all locations unless otherwise noted. Exceptions to the specifications which request surface mounting in lieu of flush must be submitted and obtain approval prior to installation.
6. Telecommunications outlets to be installed at 18" A.F.F. (to match electrical receptacles), unless denoted by "W", which indicates a wall phone separate from a standard communications outlet (e.g. in Mechanical Rooms) – "W" indicates 48" mounting height, as well as faceplate with mounting studs typically used for handsets. "OC" indicates outlet shall be mounted 6" over or above counter or work surface. See E0.0 for further information.

B. Fiber Optic Connectors

1. Connectors shall be 'LC' duplex type at all communication closets (IDFs).
2. Optical fiber cable connectors shall be capable of terminating optical fiber glass cables with outside diameters ranging from 125 through 900 microns. Fabricate connectors with optical fiber, self-centering, axial alignment mechanisms.
3. Connections shall be made via anaerobic adhesive or mechanical ("Unicam") fiber optic terminations.
4. The maximum optical attenuation per each mated field-installed connector pair shall not exceed 0.75dB. The total optical attenuation through the cross connect from any terminated optical fiber to any other terminated optical fiber shall not exceed 1.5dB. These measurements shall be performed at 5°C-23°C.
5. Connectors shall sustain a minimum of 500 mating cycles per ANSI/EIA/TIA-455-21 without violating specifications. These measurements shall be performed at 5°C-23°C.
6. The connector shall have an optical axial pull strength of 2.2N (0.5lbf) at a 0 degree angle and an optical off axial pull strength of 2.2N (0.5lbf) at a 90 degree angle, with a maximum 0.5dB increase in attenuation for both tests when tested in accordance with ANSI/TIA/EIA-455-6B.

2.6. WATER-RESISTANT (WEATHERPROOF) COVERPLATE

- A. Where identified on the drawings, Electrical Contractor shall provide water-resistant cover plates over the indicated communications outlets.
- B. Coverplate shall be manufactured by same firm responsible for the connectivity equipment (connectors, etc.) and shall be warrantied in a similar fashion.
- C. Coverplate shall include base, cover (hinged, tamper-resistant), and top/bottom and back-seal gaskets.
- D. Electrical Contractor shall provide water-resistant cover plates at outlets within 6'-0" of all lavatories, sinks or other plumbing fixtures.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. EXAMINATION

- A. Examine raceways and other elements to receive cable for compliance with installation tolerances and other adverse conditions. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2. INSTALLATION

- A. Install all cable according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Install transmission media without damaging conductors, shield, or jacket.
 2. Do not bend cable, in handling or installation, to smaller radii than minimum recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Pull cables without exceeding cable manufacturer's recommended pulling tensions.
 1. Pull cables simultaneously where more than one is being installed in same raceway.
 2. Use pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation.
 3. Use pulling means including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable

grips that will not damage media or raceway.

- C. All exposed cabling (at areas or rooms without a finished ceiling or through walls) shall be installed in conduit. Cabling shall be painted to match adjacent surfaces.
- D. Install exposed conduit parallel and perpendicular to surfaces or exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- E. Connect components to wiring system and to ground as indicated and instructed by manufacturer and according to ANSI/TIA/EIA 607 Standard. Tighten connectors and terminals, including screws and bolts, according to equipment manufacturer's published torque-tightening values for equipment connectors. Where manufacturer's torquing requirements are not indicated, tighten connectors and terminals according to tightening torques specified in UL Standard 486A.
- F. Provide cable maintenance loops of 10' length at work area outlets – maintenance loop shall be above the nearest accessible ceiling as loop at box is typically impractical.
- G. Maintain ½" or less jacket removal at terminations.
- H. Maintain ¼" or less un-twist at terminations.
- I. Maintain 1" minimum bending radius at all bends.
- J. All 4 pair cabling shall be terminated on a single jack or patch panel port – pair splitting is not acceptable.

3.3. DOCUMENTATION

- A. As-built drawings must be provided showing the location and identification number of all voice and data outlets. In addition, as-built drawings must detail the copper patch panels in each rack. Documentation must show a cable identifier on each patch panel port. Drawings must be supplied on 30"x42" paper, as well as on CD, using AutoCAD version 2006 or later.

3.4. IDENTIFICATION - CONFIRM ROOM NUMBERING AND MATRIX WITH OWNER PRIOR TO LABELING

- A. Cable Identification: All installed cables shall be labeled using a pre-printed stick-on self-adhering labeling system. The label must be applied on both ends of the cable, and shall remain clearly visible after completion of the installation. The labels must utilize the complete cable identifier developed with the cable matrix specified herein.
- B. Copper Data Cables: As part of the as-built documentation, a separate voice/data cable matrix must be supplied. This will consist of a typed listing that identifies each data cable by wiring closet, patch panel location, and device location. See example below.
- C. Each data cable must be identified on the patch panels with the identification number developed with the cable matrix specified herein. Each fiber optic cable must be identified at every fiber optic patch panels with the identification number developed with the cable matrix specified herein.
- D. Termination Identification: Provide a printed label for each terminated port on patch panels. Conform to Owner or their representative's labeling standard.

3.5. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL – CAT-6

- A. Testing: Upon installation of cable and before energizing, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements. All cabling shall be tested using a CAT 6, Level III compliant tester. Typed or printed documentation must be provided listing all runs by location. The documentation must include the original instrument printouts detailing the results of all the tests. The documentation must also detail the date each cable was tested and the tester's name.
- B. Calibration: Test equipment used shall have been certified to the manufacturer's specifications.
- C. CAT 6 Cable: Shall be tested in permanent link configuration. Testing shall be accomplished with a Level III test set with a minimum spectral frequency range of 1 to 250MHz. The test specifications for all installed cables must meet or exceed the specifications for CAT 6 cabling that are documented within the TIA/EIA- 568-C.1/2. Correct malfunctioning cables and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise remove and replace with new and retest.
- D. Cables results of PASS* (marginally pass) and FAIL* (marginally fail) are not acceptable. Correct any links that do not PASS, and re-certify the link.

3.6. GROUNDING & BONDING

- A. Provide telecommunications ground bar and insulated grounding conductors per the low-voltage (E4 series) drawings and detail (E7 series) drawings.

3.7. CLEANING

- A. Upon completion of system installation, including outlet fittings and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris and repair damaged finish, including chips, scratches, and abrasions.

3.8. DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules for start-up and shutdown, troubleshooting, servicing, and preventive maintenance. Include training on fiber optic splicing and connector attachment techniques.
- B. Review data in operating and maintenance manuals. Refer to Division One Section "Operating and Maintenance Data."
- C. Schedule training with Owner, through the Architect/Engineer, with at least seven days' advanced notice.
- D. Training for maintenance shall incorporate concerns regarding the 20-year warranty stated in Paragraph 1.6 of this section. Owner shall be able to maintain this system and necessary training or certification shall be provided to avoid warranty issues.

3.9. ACCEPTANCE

A. Acceptance will be withheld until the following have been completed successfully:

1. Acceptance of all submittals.
2. Delivery of final documentation.
3. Successful testing.
4. Successful demonstration, including operation of systems using the cables, training and manual review.

END 27 1000

1. GENERAL

1.1. SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Base Bid and Alternate Bid No. 6, Contractor shall provide:
 - 1. Equipment and terminal backboards.
 - 2. Cable hooks, supports, and fasteners.
 - 3. Ladder Rack and/or cable tray, as indicated.
 - 4. Grounding at terminal boards, including connections to telecommunications ground bar(s).
 - 5. Building telephone/data branch raceway system, including sleeves.

1.2. RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 26 05 30 – Conduit
- B. Section 26 05 33 – Boxes
- C. Section 26 05 26 – Grounding and Bonding
- D. Section 26 05 29 – Supporting Devices
- E. Section 26 05 53 – Electrical Identification.

1.3. QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Install work in accordance with Using Agency's rules and regulations.

1.4. PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Submit record documents.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. LOW VOLTAGE J-HOOKS

- A. Description: Pre-galvanized steel cable hook designed for support of low voltage cabling. Provide appropriate cable hook configuration for location installed.
- B. Size: 2" and 4" as required to accommodate cabling to be installed plus 10% spare.
- C. Hooks shall be supported from structural elements with minimum one (1) mechanical fastener (screw or anchor). Devices designed for friction-fit attachment are unacceptable.
- D. Sheet Metal Outlet Boxes: ANSI/NEMA OS 1, galvanized steel, sized as shown on drawings. Boxes shall be 4"x4" with gang(ed) cover as needed. Deep masonry type boxes may be used in masonry walls.
- E. J-Hooks shall only be used above accessible ceilings. In areas of exposed structure, all cabling shall be run in conduit.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work.
- B. Verify that field measurements are as shown on Drawings.
- C. Beginning of installation means installer accepts existing conditions.

3.2. INSTALLATION

- A. Support raceways, backboards, and cabinets under the provisions of Section 260529.
- B. Install termination backboards and cabinets plumb, and attach securely at each corner. Install cabinet trim plumb.
- C. Install pull wire or polyethylene pulling string in each empty telephone/data conduit.
- D. Mark all cabinets with the legend "COMMUNICATIONS" under the provisions of Section 2608 00.
- E. Minimum conduit size for telephone raceway is 3/4" or as indicated on drawings.
- F. Clean all empty boxes after installation.

END 27 1100

DIVISION 27 –COMMUNICATIONS
SECTION 275123.50 - EDUCATIONAL INTERCOMMUNICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Manually switched intercommunications and program systems with the following components:
 - 1. Master stations.
 - 2. Existing Bogen call control console new 25 station switch bank.
 - 3. Speaker-microphone stations.
 - 4. Call-switch unit.
 - 5. Loudspeakers/ceiling speakers.
 - 6. Conductors and cables.
 - 7. Raceways.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For educational intercommunications and program systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Include scaled drawings for station arrangement of built-in equipment.
 - 3. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
 - a. Identify terminals to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance.
 - b. Single-line diagram showing interconnection of components.
 - c. Cabling diagram showing cable routing.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For educational intercommunications and program systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - 1. A record of final matching transformer-tap settings and signal ground-resistance measurement certified by Installer.
 - 2. A record of Owner's equipment-programming option decisions.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain educational intercommunications and program systems from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted speaker microphones and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following manufacturer offering products that shall be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - 1. Bogen Communications, Inc.

2.2 FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION OF MANUALLY SWITCHED SYSTEMS

- A. Master Station:
 - 1. Communicating selectively with other master and speaker-microphone stations by actuating selector switches.
 - 2. Communicating simultaneously with all other stations by actuating a single all-call switch.
 - 3. Communicating with individual stations in privacy.
 - 4. Including other master-station connections in a multiple-station conference call.
 - 5. Accessing separate paging speakers or groups of paging speakers by actuating selector switches.
 - 6. Overriding any conversation by a designated master station.

- B. Speaker-Microphone Station:
 1. Having privacy from remote monitoring without a warning tone signal at monitored station. Designated speaker-microphone stations have a privacy switch to prevent another station from listening and to permit incoming calls.
 2. Communicating hands free.
 3. Calling master station by actuating call switch.
 4. Returning a busy signal to indicate that station is already in use.
 5. Being free of noise and distortion during operation and when in standby mode.
- C. Speakers: Free of noise and distortion during operation and when in standby mode.
- D. Remote Stations:
 1. Speaker-Microphone Station:
 - a. Having privacy from remote monitoring without a warning tone signal at monitored station. Designated speaker-microphone stations have a privacy switch to prevent another station from listening and to permit incoming calls.
 - b. Communicating hands free.
 - c. Calling master station by actuating call switch.
 - d. Returning a busy signal to indicate that station is already in use.
- E. Speakers: Free of noise and distortion during operation and when in standby mode.

2.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

- A. Coordinate features and select components to form an integrated system. Match components and interconnections for optimum performance of specified functions.
- B. Expansion Capability: Increase number of existing stations by **25** percent above those indicated without adding any internal or external components or main trunk cable conductors.
- C. Equipment: Modular type using solid-state components, fully rated for continuous duty unless otherwise indicated. Select equipment for normal operation on input power usually supplied at 110 to 130 V, 60 Hz. Comply with UL 813.

2.4 CALL-SWITCH UNIT

- A. Enclosure: Single-gang box with stainless-steel faceplate.
- B. Call Switch: Momentary contact signals system that a call has been placed.
- C. Privacy Switch: Prevents transmission of sound signals from station to system.
- D. Volume Control: Operated by screwdriver blade through a hole in faceplate to adjust output level of associated speaker.

2.5 CONE-TYPE LOUDSPEAKERS/SPEAKER MICROPHONES

- A. Minimum Axial Sensitivity: 91 dB at one meter, with 1-W input.
- B. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 3 dB from 70 to 15,000 Hz.

- C. Minimum Dispersion Angle: 100 degrees.
- D. Line Transformer: Maximum insertion loss of 0.5 dB, power rating equal to speaker's, and at least four level taps.
- E. Enclosures: Steel housings or back boxes, acoustically dampened, with front face of at least 0.0478-inch (1.2-mm) steel and whole assembly rust proofed and factory primed; complete with mounting assembly and suitable for surface ceiling, flush ceiling, pendant or wall mounting; with relief of back pressure.
- F. Baffle: For flush speakers, minimum thickness of 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) aluminum with textured white finish.
- G. Size: 8 inches (200 mm) with 1-inch (25-mm) voice coil and minimum 5-oz. (140-g) ceramic magnet.

2.6 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conductors: Jacketed, twisted pair and twisted multipair, untinned solid copper. Sizes as recommended by system manufacturer, but no smaller than No. 22 AWG.
- B. Insulation: Thermoplastic, not less than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) thick.
- C. Shielding: For speaker-microphone leads and elsewhere where recommended by manufacturer; No. 34 AWG, tinned, soft-copper strands formed into a braid or equivalent foil.
 - 1. Minimum Shielding Coverage on Conductors: 60 percent.
- D. Plenum Cable: Listed and labeled for plenum installation.

2.7 RACEWAYS

- A. Educational Intercommunication and Program System Raceways and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- B. Educational Intercommunication and Program System Raceways and Boxes: Same as required for electrical branch circuits specified in Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- C. Educational Intercommunication and Program System Raceways and Boxes: **EMT**.
- D. Outlet boxes shall be not less than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.
- E. Flexible metal conduit is prohibited.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WIRING METHODS

- A. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters, and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions

where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
2. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

B. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.

B. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. General Requirements:

1. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at outlets and terminals.
2. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Arrange on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Cables may not be spliced.
3. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
4. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
5. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
6. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used.

C. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunication spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend speaker cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceiling by cable supports not more than **60 inches (1524 mm)** apart.
3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or be in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

D. Separation of Wires: Separate speaker-microphone, line-level, speaker-level, and power wiring runs. Install in separate raceways or, where exposed or in same enclosure, separate

conductors at least 12 inches (300 mm) apart for speaker microphones and adjacent parallel power and telephone wiring. Separate other intercommunication equipment conductors as recommended by equipment manufacturer.

3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Match input and output impedances and signal levels at signal interfaces. Provide matching networks where required.
- B. Identification of Conductors and Cables: Color-code conductors and apply wire and cable marking tape to designate wires and cables so they identify media in coordination with system wiring diagrams.
- C. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 GROUNDING

- A. Ground cable shields and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.
- B. Signal Ground Terminal: Locate at main equipment cabinet. Isolate from power system and equipment grounding.
- C. Install grounding electrodes as specified in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: **Engage** a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Schedule tests with at least seven days' advance notice of test performance.
 - 2. After installing educational intercommunications and program systems and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 3. Operational Test: Test originating station-to-station, all-call, and page messages at each intercommunication station. Verify proper routing and volume levels and that system is free of noise and distortion. Test each available message path from each station on system.
 - 4. Frequency Response Test: Determine frequency response of two transmission paths, including all-call and paging, by transmitting and recording audio tones. Minimum acceptable performance is within 3 dB from 150 to 2500 Hz.

5. Signal-to-Noise Ratio Test: Measure signal-to-noise ratio of complete system at normal gain settings as follows:
 6. Distortion Test: Measure distortion at normal gain settings and rated power. Feed signals at frequencies of 150, 200, 400, 1000, and 2500 Hz into each intercom, paging, and all-call amplifier. For each frequency, measure distortion in the paging and all-call amplifier outputs. Maximum acceptable distortion at any frequency is 5 percent total harmonics.
 7. Power Output Test: Measure electrical power output of each paging amplifier at normal gain settings of 150, 1000, and 2500 Hz. Maximum variation in power output at these frequencies is plus or minus 3 dB.
 8. Signal Ground Test: Measure and report ground resistance at system signal ground. Comply with testing requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly labeled and interconnecting wires and terminals are identified. Prepare a list of final tap settings of paging and independent room speaker-line matching transformers.
 - F. Educational intercommunications and program systems will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
 - G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service and initial system programming.
 1. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's submittal and installation requirements.
 2. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 3. Label each new station switch on new switch bank to match room numbers provided by the owner.

3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. On-Site Assistance: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to provide on-site assistance in adjusting sound levels, resetting transformer taps, and adjusting controls to meet occupancy conditions.
- B. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within **12** months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to **two** visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the educational intercommunications and program systems.
 1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on programming equipment for starting up and shutting down, troubleshooting, servicing, and maintaining the system and equipment.

END OF SECTION 275123.50

DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY
SECTION 282300 - Video Surveillance

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a video surveillance system consisting of cameras, digital video recorder, data transmission wiring and its associated equipment.
- B. Removal and replacement of 9 existing cameras.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AGC: Automatic gain control.
- B. BNC: Bayonet Neill-Concelman - type of connector.
- C. CCD: Charge-coupled device.
- D. FTP: File transfer protocol.
- E. IP: Internet protocol.
- F. LAN: Local area network.
- G. MPEG: Moving picture experts group.
- H. NTSC: National Television System Committee.
- I. PC: Personal computer.
- J. PTZ: Pan-tilt-zoom.
- K. RAID: Redundant array of independent disks.
- L. TCP: Transmission control protocol - connects hosts on the Internet.
- M. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
- N. WAN: Wide area network.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions and data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For video surveillance. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Functional Block Diagram: Show single-line interconnections between components for signal transmission and control. Show cable types and sizes.
 - 3. Dimensioned plan and elevations of equipment racks, control panels, and consoles. Show access and workspace requirements.
 - 4. UPS: Sizing calculations.
 - 5. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Equipment List: Include every piece of equipment by model number, manufacturer, serial number, location, and date of original installation. Add pretesting record of each piece of equipment, listing name of person testing, date of test, set points of adjustments, name and description of the view of preset positions, description of alarms, and description of unit output responses to an alarm.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For cameras, power supplies, infrared illuminators, monitors, videotape recorders, digital video recorders, video switches, and control-station components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - 1. Lists of spare parts and replacement components recommended to be stored at the site for ready access.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.
- D. Electronic data exchange between video surveillance systems with an access-control system shall comply with SIA TVAC.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Conditions: Capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:
1. Control Station: Rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 60 to 85 deg F (16 to 29 deg C) and a relative humidity of 20 to 80 percent, noncondensing.
 2. Interior, Controlled Environment: System components, except central-station control unit, installed in temperature-controlled interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of [36 to 122 deg F (2 to 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosures.
 3. Exterior Environment: System components installed in locations exposed to weather shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of minus 30 to plus 122 deg F (minus 34 to plus 50 deg C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, condensing. Rate for continuous operation when exposed to rain as specified in NEMA 250, winds up to 85 mph (137 km/h) and snow cover up to 24 inches (610 mm) thick. Use NEMA 250, Type 3R or Type 4 enclosures.
 4. Security Environment: Camera housing for use in high-risk areas where surveillance equipment may be subject to physical violence.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of cameras, equipment related to camera operation, and control-station equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. Video-signal format shall comply with NTSC standard, composite interlaced video. Composite video-signal termination shall be 75 ohms.
- B. Surge Protection: Protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads. Include surge protection for external wiring of each conductor's entry connection to components.
1. Minimum Protection for Power Connections 120 V and More: Auxiliary panel suppressors complying with requirements.
 2. Minimum Protection for Communication, Signal, Control, and Low-Voltage Power Connections as recommended by manufacturer for type of line being protected.

2.2 STANDARD CAMERAS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
1. AXIS Communications.

2. Preapproval Required

B. Color Camera:

1. Comply with UL 639.
2. Pickup Device: CCD interline transfer, 380,000 pixels.
3. Horizontal Resolution: 480 lines.
4. Signal-to-Noise Ratio: Not less than 50 dB, with camera AGC off.
5. With AGC, manually selectable on or off.
6. Sensitivity: Camera shall provide usable images in low-light conditions, delivering an image at a scene illumination of a lux with camera AGC off.
7. Sensitivity: Camera shall deliver 1-V peak-to-peak video signal at the minimum specified light level. Illumination for the test shall be with lamps rated at approximately 2200-K color temperature, and with camera AGC off.
8. Automatic selectable modes for backlight compensation or normal lighting.
9. Scanning Synchronization: Determined by external synch over the coaxial cable. Camera shall revert to internally generated synchronization on loss of external synch signal.
10. White Balance: Auto-tracing white balance, with manually settable fixed balance option.
11. Motion Detector: Built-in digital.

C. Automatic Color Dome Camera: Assembled and tested as a manufactured unit, containing dome assembly, color camera, motorized pan and tilt, zoom lens, and receiver/driver.

1. Comply with UL 639.
2. Pickup Device: CCD interline transfer, 380,000 pixels.
3. Horizontal Resolution: 480 lines.
4. Signal-to-Noise Ratio: Not less than 50 dB, with camera AGC off.
5. With AGC, manually selectable on or off.
6. Sensitivity: Camera shall provide usable images in low-light conditions, delivering an image at a scene illumination of a lux at with camera AGC off.
7. Sensitivity: Camera shall deliver 1-V peak-to-peak video signal at the minimum specified light level. Illumination for the test shall be with lamps rated at approximately 2200-K color temperature, and with camera AGC off.
8. Manually selectable modes for backlight compensation or normal lighting.
9. Preset Positioning: Eight user-definable scenes, each allowing 16-character titles. Controls shall include the following:
 - a. In "sequence mode," camera shall continuously sequence through preset positions, with dwell time and sequencing under operator control.
 - b. Motion detection shall be available at each camera position.
 - c. Up to four preset positions may be selected to be activated by an alarm. Each of the alarm positions may be programmed to output a response signal.
10. Scanning Synchronization: Determined by external synch over the coaxial cable. Camera shall revert to internally generated synchronization on loss of external synch signal.
11. White Balance: Auto-tracing white balance, with manually settable fixed balance option.
12. Motion Detector: Built-in digital.
13. Dome shall support multiplexed control communications using coaxial cable recommended by manufacturer.

2.3 POWER SUPPLIES

- A. Low-voltage power POE supplies matched for voltage and current requirements of cameras and accessories, and of type as recommended by manufacturer of camera and lens.

2.4 CAMERA-SUPPORTING EQUIPMENT

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - 1. AXIS Communications.
 - 2. Preapproval required
- B. Minimum Load Rating: Rated for load in excess of the total weight supported times a minimum safety factor of two.
- C. Mounting Brackets for Fixed Cameras: Type matched to items supported and mounting conditions. Include manual pan-and-tilt adjustment.
- D. Protective Housings for Fixed and Movable Cameras: Steel or 6061 T6 aluminum enclosures with internal camera mounting and connecting provisions that are matched to camera/lens combination and mounting and installing arrangement of camera to be housed.
 - 1. Camera Viewing Window: Lexan window, aligned with camera lens.
 - 2. Alignment Provisions: Camera mounting shall provide for field aiming of camera and permit removal and reinstallation of camera lens without disturbing camera alignment.
 - 3. Built-in, thermostat-activated heater and blower units. Units shall be automatically controlled so the environmental limits of the camera equipment are not exceeded.
 - 4. Sun shield shall not interfere with normal airflow around the housing.
 - 5. Mounting bracket and hardware for wall or ceiling mounting of the housing. Bracket shall be of same material as the housing; mounting hardware shall be stainless steel.
 - 6. Finish: Housing and mounting bracket shall be factory finished using manufacturer's standard finishing process suitable for the environment.

2.5 NETWORK VIDEO RECORDERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - 1. AXIS Communications.
 - 2. Preapproval required
- B. External storage or internal 250-1, 500-GB hard disk drive.
 - 1. Video and audio recording over TCP/IP network.
 - 2. Video recording of MPEG-2 and MPEG-4 streams.
 - 3. Video recording up to 48 Mbps for internal storage and up to 100 Mbps for external storage.
 - 4. Duplex Operation: Simultaneous recording and playback.
 - 5. Continuous and alarm-based recording.
 - 6. Full-Featured Search Capabilities: Search based on camera, time, or date.
 - 7. Automatic data replenishment to ensure recording even if network is down.
 - 8. Digital certification by watermarking.

9. Internal RAID storage or non-RAID storage of up to 1500 GB.
10. Capable of adding external RAID storage up to 7000 GB for models with no internal storage.
11. Full integration with LAN, Intranet, or Internet through standard Web browser or video management software.
12. Integrated Web server FTP server functionality.
13. Supports up to 32 or 64 devices.

2.6 IP VIDEO SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:

1. AXIS Communications.
2. Preapproval required

- B. Description:

1. System shall provide high-quality delivery and processing of IP-based video, audio, and control data using standard Ethernet-based networks.
2. System shall have seamless integration of all video surveillance and control functions.
3. Graphical user interface software shall manage all IP-based video matrix switching and camera control functions, two-way audio communication, alarm monitoring and control, and recording and archive/retrieval management. IP system shall also be capable of integrating into larger system environments.
4. System design shall include all necessary compression software for high-performance, dual-stream, and MPEG-2/MPEG-4 video. Unit shall provide connections for all video cameras, camera PTZ control data, bidirectional audio, discreet sensor inputs, and control system outputs.
5. All camera signals shall be compressed, encoded, and delivered onto the network for processing and control by the IP video-management software.
6. Camera system units shall be ruggedly built and designed for extreme adverse environments, complying with NEMA Type environmental standards.
7. Encoder/decoder combinations shall place video, audio, and data network stream that can be managed from multiple workstations on the user's LAN or WAN.
8. All system interconnect cables, workstation PCs, PTZ joysticks, and network intermediate devices shall be provided for full performance of specified system.

2.7 SIGNAL TRANSMISSION COMPONENTS

- A. Cabling shall be CAT6
- B. Connectors shall be as required by equipment connections.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerance, hazards to camera installation, and other conditions affecting installation.
- B. Examine roughing-in for LAN, WAN, and IP network before device installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 WIRING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Except raceways are not required in accessible indoor ceiling spaces and attics.
 - 2. Except raceways are not required in hollow gypsum board partitions.
 - 3. Conceal raceways and wiring except in unfinished spaces.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: For power and control wiring, use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- E. Grounding: Provide independent-signal circuit grounding recommended in writing by manufacturer.

3.3 VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install cameras level and plumb.
- B. Install cameras with 84-inch- (2134-mm-) minimum clear space below cameras and their mountings. Change type of mounting to achieve required clearance.
- C. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

- C. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly installed, connected, and labeled, and that interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.
 - 2. Pretesting: Align and adjust system and pretest components, wiring, and functions to verify that they comply with specified requirements. Conduct tests at varying lighting levels, including day and night scenes as applicable. Prepare video-surveillance equipment for acceptance and operational testing as follows:
 - a. Prepare equipment list described in "Informational Submittals" Article.
 - b. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses.
 - c. Set back-focus of fixed focal length lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Adjust until image is in focus with and without the filter.
 - d. Set back-focus of zoom lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Additionally, set zoom to full wide angle and aim camera at an object 50 to 75 feet (17 to 23 m) away. Adjust until image is in focus from full wide angle to full telephoto, with the filter in place.
 - e. Set and name all preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
 - f. Set sensitivity of motion detection.
 - g. Connect and verify responses to alarms.
 - h. Verify operation of control-station equipment.
 - 3. Test Schedule: Schedule tests after pretesting has been successfully completed and system has been in normal functional operation for at least 14 days. Provide a minimum of 10 days' notice of test schedule.
 - 4. Operational Tests: Perform operational system tests to verify that system complies with Specifications. Include all modes of system operation. Test equipment for proper operation in all functional modes.
- E. Video surveillance system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose. Tasks shall include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Check cable connections.
 - 2. Check proper operation of cameras and lenses. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses and adjust back-focus as needed.
 - 3. Adjust all preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
 - 4. Recommend changes to cameras, lenses, and associated equipment to improve Owner's use of video surveillance system.

5. Provide a written report of adjustments and recommendations.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean installed items using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- B. Clean video-surveillance-system components, including camera-housing windows, lenses, and monitor screens.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain video-surveillance equipment.

END OF SECTION 282300

DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY
Section 28 3111 - Fire and Smoke Detection System

1. GENERAL

1.1. WORK INCLUDES

- A. Base Bid and Alternate Bid No. 6: Contractor shall provide new fire alarm control panel, initiating devices and new notification appliances for building. The electrical contractor shall provide all required components, devices, conduit, cable, and labor necessary for the complete and successful installation of a fire alarm system including but the following as a minimum:
1. Manual pullstations
 2. Detection Devices (including Smoke and Heat Detectors).
 3. Notification Appliances (Visual, voice and Audible/Visual signals), wall- and ceiling-mounted.
 4. Addressable Interface units (Monitoring and Control / Relay modules) and isolation module.
 5. Fire Alarm Control Panel.
 6. Fire Alarm Annunciator Panel.
 7. Fire Alarm Communicator (DACT).
 8. Remote Power Supplies (RPS units).
 9. Fire alarm wire and cable.
 10. Transient Voltage Surge Suppression modules.
 11. Integration to fire protection system, including wet system.
- B. The fire alarm system shall be fully operational by the dates indicated in Division One specifications.

1.2. REFERENCES

- A. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code (NEC), 20014.
- B. NFPA 72 – National Fire Alarm Code, 2011.
- C. NFPA 101 – Life Safety Code, 2011
- D. International Building Code (IBC), 2012.
- E. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADAAG) and Illinois Accessibility Code.

1.3. REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. System: Listed by a NRTL.

1.4. SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Fire Alarm system:
1. Fire Alarm System: Control Panel shall include Automatic and Manual Initiation, and Visual and Audible signaling. System shall also include monitoring modules to monitor tamper switches and flow switches, and control / relay modules to control indicated equipment (electromagnetic door holders, air-handling unit shutdown, etc.).
 2. Signal Transmission: Multiplex signal transmission. Initiation device circuits shall be

wired Class B, Style 4. Notification Appliance Circuits shall be wired Class B, Style Y.

B. Definitions:

1. GENERAL ALARM:

- a. Audible, Visual and combined Notification Appliances and auxiliary devices are activated. By convention, we define "auxiliary devices" as equipment that: transmit signal(s) to building mechanical systems to initiate shutdown of fans, and transmit signal(s) to exterior stair doors to deactivate security delay.
- b. Fire Alarm Visual and Audible signals shall be transmitted to the Fire Alarm Annunciator Panels and indicate the location of individual alarm initiating device on 80-character display on Fire Alarm Control Panel.
- c. The audible alarm for the building shall consist of an alert tone of between 3 seconds to 10 seconds duration followed by a message repeated three times to direct the occupants of the alarm signal initiation floor and other zones. Failure of the message shall sound the evacuation signal automatically. Provisions for manual initiation of voice instructions or evacuation signal generation shall be provided. Live voice instructions shall override all previously initiated signals but be no longer than three minutes in length (per IBC standards).

2. ALARM: Fire alarm Notification appliances are not activated and auxiliary devices are not shut down. Visual and audible signals will be transmitted to the Fire Alarm Annunciator Panels and indicate the location of individual alarm initiating device on 80-character display on Fire Alarm Control Panel.

3. NOTIFICATION: General notification appliances are activated and live voice instructions shall be provided to the selected zones.

C. SEQUENCE OF OPERATION:

1. Actuation of a manual fire alarm pull station, heat detector or smoke detector, shall cause the fire alarm system to enter GENERAL ALARM.
2. System ground fault, open circuit, AC power failure or system failure shall cause system to enter TROUBLE mode.
3. GENERAL ALARM Sequence of Operation (see Definitions / this section for additional information):

- a. Indicate location of individual alarm initiating device in English on 80-character displays on Fire Alarm Control and Annunciator Panels.
- b. Activate Building Fire Alarm notification appliances and pre-recorded voice command message.

4. TROUBLE Sequence of Operation:

- a. Indicate location of individual trouble alarm device in English on 80-character display and provide visual and audible trouble signal at the Fire Alarm Control and Annunciator Panel(s).
- b. Manual ACKNOWLEDGE function at either type of panel silences audible trouble alarm; visual alarm is displayed until initiating trouble is cleared.

5. DRILL Sequence of Operation: Manual DRILL function causes ALARM mode operation to:

- a. System shall be programmed so that each building can be independently drilled.
- b. Sound and display local fire alarm notification devices only.

- c. Transmit signal to release door hold open devices.
 - d. Transmit signal to Fire Alarm system Annunciator Panels.
6. Alarm Reset and Silence: Key-accessible RESET function at the control panels acknowledges alarm or trouble and resets system out of ALARM if alarm signaling circuits have cleared. If signaling circuits have not cleared, the local panel audible signal silences, the notification devices will be turned off, and an LED is lit. Subsequent alarms or troubles shall cause the panels' audible signal and the notification devices to operate until silenced in turn. Restoration to normal of the signaling circuit shall extinguish the associated LED and cause the panel audible signal to sound until the restoration is acknowledged by switch operation.

1.5. SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit shop drawings and product data under provisions of Division One specifications.
- B. Provide project specific wiring diagrams, data sheets, and equipment ratings, layout, dimensions, and finishes, and battery calculation chart. Include a complete sequence of operation for the system.
- C. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.
- D. Submit manufacturer's certificate that system meets or exceeds specified requirements.

1.6. PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Submit documents under provisions of Division One specifications.
- B. Include plans, diagrams and details including location of end of line devices on notification circuits.

1.7. OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

- A. Submit data under provisions of Division One specifications.
- B. Include operating instructions, and maintenance and repair procedures and Project Record Drawings with manual.
- C. Include manufacturer representative's letter stating that system is fully operational.
- D. Include the system testing documentation in compliance with NFPA 72.

1.8. DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products to site under provisions of Division One specifications.
- B. Store and protect products under provisions of Division One specifications.

1.9. WARRANTY

- A. The fire alarm system modifications and new components shall be fully guaranteed for a period of one year beginning on the date of substantial completion. Substantial completion will be granted after the system is fully operational and all testing documentation has been completed.

- B. The guarantee shall include the entire scope of work including all equipment, devices, materials, cable/wire, software and installation.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. FIRE ALARM SYSTEM

A. Manufacturers / Suppliers

1. Notifier by Tech Electronics.
2. FCI/Gamewell by Midwest Electronics.
3. Silent Knight by Security Alarm.
4. Siemens by Branch Office or Bick Group.
5. Simplex (TycoGrinnell) by Branch Office.

B. Fire Alarm and Smoke Detection Control Panels (FACP)

1. System Capacity and General Operation:
 - a. The control panels shall provide sufficient capacity for the Analog Addressable Smoke and Heat Detectors, Addressable Monitor and Control Modules, and all other Intelligent/Addressable devices that are indicated on the plans and that are necessary to make the system fully functional and 20% spare device capacity for both the detector AND intelligent modules independently.
2. Each Fire Alarm control panel shall be provided with a locking door to prevent unauthorized access to any function or control. The 80-character LED display shall be visible through this door.
3. Each fire alarm control panel shall include a full featured operator interface control and annunciation panel which shall include a backlit 80-character Liquid Crystal Display, individual, color coded system status LEDs, and an alpha-numeric keypad for the Field Programming and Control of the Fire alarm System.
4. All programming of the system shall be achieved without special equipment and without interrupting the alarm monitoring functions of the Fire Alarm Control Panel.
5. The Central Processing Unit shall communicate with, monitor, and control all other modules within the control panel. Removal, disconnection or failure of any control panel module shall be detected and reported to the System Common Control Annunciator by the Central Processing Unit. The Central Processing Unit shall contain and execute all control-by-event programs for specific action to be taken if an alarm condition is detected by the system. Such-control-by-event programs shall be held in non-volatile programmable memory, and shall not be lost even if system primary and secondary power failure occurs. The Central Processing Unit shall also provide a real-time clock for time annunciation of all system displays. The Time-of-Day and date shall not be lost if system primary and secondary power supplies fail.
6. The System Display shall be the system common control/annunciator, and shall provide all the controls and indicators used by the system operator and may also be used to program all system operational parameters. The Display Interface Assembly shall contain, and display as required, the custom alphanumeric labels for all Intelligent Detectors and Addressable Modules on an 80-character alphanumeric Liquid Crystal Display. Such label information shall be stored in programmable non-volatile memory.
7. Activation of the system Test Switch shall initiate an automatic test of all Intelligent/Addressable detectors in the system. The System Test shall activate the electronics in each intelligent sensor, simulating an alarm condition and causing the transmission of the alarm condition from that sensor to the Fire Alarm Control Panel. The Fire alarm Control panel shall interpret the data from each sensor installed in the system. A report summarizing the results of this test shall be displayed automatically

- on the System Liquid Crystal Display.
8. Means shall be provided for adjusting the sensitivity of any or all analog intelligent detectors in the system from the system keypad. Sensitivity range shall be within the allowed NRTL window, and shall be a HIGH/MEDIUM/LOW selection. These levels shall be adjustable from the Workstation Software located in the Command Center.
 9. Each of the Intelligent/Addressable Smoke Detectors in the system shall be independently selected and enabled to be an alarm verified detector. The Alarm Verification Function shall be from 5-50 seconds and each detector shall be able to be enabled/disabled during the field programming of the system, or any time after system turn-on.
 10. The system will be able to generate and print a summary of all of the Detectors, Modules and Pullstations that are currently active in the system. This printout will require password protection to prevent unauthorized user access, and will automatically print the system report using keys. No computer expertise will be required to initiate the System Report sequence.
 11. The Fire Alarm Control Panel shall contain a History Buffer that will be capable of storing up to 300 system output/input/control activations. Each of these activations will be stored and time and date stamped with the actual time of the activation, until a password authorized operator requests that the contents be displayed. The contents of the History Buffer may be manually reviewed, one event at a time, and the actual number of activations may also be displayed.
 12. The Fire Alarm Control Panel shall automatically interrogate each Intelligent System Detector and shall analyze the detector responses over a period of time. If any Intelligent Detector in the system responds with a reading which is below 20% of normal limits (for 5 out of 6 polls), or above 80% of normal limits for a period of 24 hours, then the system will enter the Trouble Mode, and the particular Intelligent Detector will be annunciated on the System Display, and printed on the future System Printer.
 13. When a fire alarm condition is detected and reported by one of the system initiating devices or appliances, the following functions shall immediately occur:
 14. A local signal in the control panel shall sound.
 15. The 80-character LCD display shall indicate all information associated with the Fire Alarm condition, including: type of alarm point, its location within the protected premises, and the time and date of that activation. All system output programs assigned via control-by-event equations to be activated by the particular point in alarm shall be executed including: Alarm Notification Devices, control relays for door release, elevator and AHU shutdown.
 16. The fire alarm control panel shall contain auxiliary contacts, one to close when the system enters the trouble mode, and a separate auxiliary contact to close when the system enters into alarm.
 17. Power supply: Adequate to serve control panel modules, and all alarm signaling devices. Include battery operated emergency power supply with capacity for operating system in standby mode for 24 hours followed by alarm mode for 15 minutes.

2.2. INITIATING DEVICES

- A. Manual Station: Double-action type, fabricated of metal or high-impact plastic, and finished in red with molded raised letter operating instructions of contrasting color. Stations requiring the breaking of a glass rod shall not be provided. Provide with keyed reset.
- B. Smoke Detector: Comply with UL 268; the Photoelectric-Type Smoke Detectors shall be Intelligent and Addressable, and shall connect with two wires to one of the Fire Alarm Control Panel Signaling Line Circuits. The detectors shall use either a light obscuration or light scattering principal to measure products of combustion and shall, on command from the control panel, send data to the panel representing the analog level of products of

combustion.

- C. Heat Detector: The Intelligent Heat Detectors shall be Intelligent and Addressable, and shall connect with two wires to one of the Fire Alarm Control Panel Signaling Line Circuits. The detectors shall use an electronic sensor to measure thermal conditions caused by a fire and shall, on command from the control panel, send data to the panel representing the analog level of such thermal measurements. Both fixed temperature and rate-of-rise detectors shall be utilized.
- D. Carbon Monoxide Detectors: detector shall be addressable (preferred) or conventional / hardwired device with an addressable module to monitor detector alarm and trouble status (or detectors if multiple devices in one room). Detector shall be 24VDC and be powered directly by the Fire Alarm Control Panel or by a remote power supply with a constant-voltage (not switchable) NAC circuit. Device shall be cable of mounting to an electrical junction (1-gang) box. Detector shall contain electrochemical sensing technology and meet UL 2034/2075 and NFPA 720 standards. Detector shall be monitored for supervisory (alarm at device) and trouble.
- E. Monitor modules shall be provided to connect any N.O. or N.C. dry contact device as shown. The Monitor Module shall provide address setting and store an internal identifying code that the Fire Alarm Control Panel shall use to identify the type of device.
- F. Control Modules shall be provided to supervise and control the operation of one signal circuit or as an addressable dry contact (form C) relay. The Control Module shall provide address-setting means and store an internal identifying code that the Control Panel shall use to identify the type of device.

2.3. SIGNALING DEVICES

- A. Audible/Visual/Voice Signal: certifications shall include NFPA 72, UL 1971, and Americans with Disabilities Act. Device shall be semi-flush type speaker with RED lettered FIRE on WHITE device body. Sound Rating 89 dB at 10 feet (minimum). Provide with integral strobe assembly and flasher with candela rating as indicated on the drawings. Device shall be clearly marked with strobe device intensity rating visible without unit disassembly or device removal. Devices shall be capable of silencing the audible component while the visual component is still active, on the same pair of NAC circuit wires.
- B. Visual Fire Alarm System Signal: certifications include NFPA 72, UL 1971, and Americans with Disabilities Act. Device shall be semi-flush strobe assembly and flasher with candela rating as indicated on the drawings, with RED lettered FIRE on WHITE device body. Device shall be clearly marked with strobe device intensity rating visible without unit disassembly or device removal.

2.4. LOCAL FIRE ALARM ANNUNCIATOR PANEL

- A. The annunciator shall be semi-flush or flush mounted and capable of displaying in English on an 80-character LCD display. The annunciator shall include a Piezo sounder, time and date display, system acknowledge switch, signal silence switch and system reset switch.
- B. The annunciator shall include LEDs to indicate: Power, Alarm and Trouble.
- C. Provide a key-switch that will enable / disable the function of the control switches of the annunciator.

2.5. DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTER

- A. Digital alarm communicator transmitter shall be acceptable to the remote central station

and shall comply with UL 632 and be listed and labeled by an NRTL.

- B. Functional performance: Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire alarm control panel and automatically capture two telephone lines then dial a pre-set number for a remote central station. When contact is made with the central station, signals shall be transmitted. If service on either line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter shall initiate a local trouble signal and transmit the signal indicating loss of telephone line to the remote alarm receiving station over the remaining line. Transmitter shall automatically report telephone service restoration to the central station. If service is lost on both telephone lines, transmitter shall initiate the local trouble signal.
- C. Local functions and display at the digital alarm communicator shall include the following:
 - 1. Verification that both telephone lines are available.
 - 2. Programming device.
 - 3. LED display.
 - 4. Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.
 - 5. Communications failure with the central station of the fire alarm control panel.
- D. Digital data transmission shall include the following:
 - 1. Address of the alarm initiating device.
 - 2. Address of the supervisory signal.
 - 3. Address of the trouble initiating device.
 - 4. Loss of AC supply or loss of power.
 - 5. Low battery.
 - 6. Abnormal test signal.
 - 7. Communication bus failure.
- E. Secondary power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger.
- F. Self-test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central station.

2.6. FIRE ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Provide all fire alarm cabling as power-limited fire-protective signaling cable riser rated.
- B. Initiating and Signaling Circuits:
 - 1. Meets requirements of Article 760 of the NEC for power limited cable, including required jacket marking.
 - 2. Minimum wire gauge: #16 AWG solid copper.
 - 3. Number of pairs: 1 Pair, shielded.
 - 4. Voltage rating: 300 volts.
 - 5. Jacket material: Plenum rated.
 - 6. Temperature rating: 105 deg. C in plenum.
 - 7. Shielding: Overall foil shield with 22-gauge drain wire.
- C. Notification Appliance Circuits (NAC) and Control Circuits:
 - 1. Meets requirements of Article 760 of the NEC for power limited cables, including required jacket marking.
 - 2. Minimum wire gauge: #14 AWG solid copper.
 - 3. Number of pairs: 1 Pair, unshielded.
 - 4. Voltage rating: 300 volts.
 - 5. Jacket material: Plenum rated.
 - 6. Temperature rating: 105 deg. C in plenum.

2.7. NAMEPLATES AND LABELS.

- A. Nameplates and labels shall be provided for all addressable devices. Nameplates and labels shall be in accordance with Specification Section 26 05 53 and mounted within the protective cover for the device were applicable. Labels for ceiling mounted smoke or heat detectors shall have 1/4" lettering and be mounted on the inside of the protective cover at the base of the unit. The contractor shall take care to orient all nameplates so that they can be read from the floor. Labels for pull stations and other wall devices shall have 1/8" lettering. These shall be secured to the wall using tamper proof screws.

2.8. ADDITIONAL DEVICES

- A. In addition to the devices indicated on the electrical drawings, Electrical Contractor shall provide (10) additional single-input intelligent monitoring modules and (5) additional control modules, plus all installation and programming labor, as well as all final connections. E.C. shall also include an allotment (both material and labor costs) of 200'-0" of SLC (Fire Alarm signaling line circuit) cabling, 100'-0" of 3/4" EMT conduit, and 50'-0" of 3/4" liquid-tight flexible conduit, as well as all fittings, connectors, etc. Also provide (3) duct detectors with 72" sampling tubes and (3) control modules per installation and programming labor, as well as all final connections and intermediate wiring between control module and control circuit associated with monitored/controlled HVAC unit/device

3. EXECUTION

3.1. INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install system in accordance with NFPA Standards referenced in Parts 1 and 2 of this Section.
- B. Connect fire alarm system initiating circuits to devices to be controlled by fire alarm. Coordinate with equipment supplier.

3.2. EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Smoke and Heat Detectors: Install detectors indicated to be ceiling mounted not less than 4 inches from a side wall to the near edge. Install detectors located on the wall at least 4 inches but not more than 12 inches below the ceiling. Install detectors no closer than 5 ft. from air registers.

3.3. WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Install wiring in accordance with Specification Section 26 05 19. Contractor shall protect all edges of surface raceway to ensure that cable is not damaged during installation. All cabling to be in conduit.
- B. Wiring Enclosures: Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to the sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train the conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with the fire alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal in accordance with the wiring diagrams of the system. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
- C. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull or outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where any circuit tap is made.
- D. Alarm Wiring: For the low-voltage portion of the fire alarm system, install 75-deg C

insulation in wet, damp, or dry locations. Provide wiring operating at line voltage having similar insulation.

- E. Color Coding: Color code all fire alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Provide one color code for alarm circuits wiring and a different color code for supervisory circuits. Provide a color code for audible alarm indicating circuits different from alarm initiating circuits. Use different colors for visual alarm indicating devices.

3.4. GROUNDING

- A. Ground equipment and conductor and cable shields. Provide 5-ohm ground at main equipment location. Measure, record, and report ground resistance.

3.5. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Services: Provide services of a factory-authorized service representative for the pretesting, testing, and adjustment of the system.

- B. Pretesting: Upon completing installation of the system, align, adjust, and balance the system and perform complete pretesting. Determine, through pretesting, the conformance of the system to the requirements of the Drawings and Specifications. Correct deficiencies observed in pretesting. Replace malfunctioning or damaged items with new, and retest until satisfactory performance and conditions are achieved. Prepare forms for systematic recording of acceptance test results. Each device shall be tested during the pretest. Verify the absence of unwanted voltages between circuit conductors and ground. Megger test all conductors other than those intentionally and permanently grounded with electronic components disconnected. Test for resistance to ground. Report readings less than 1-megohm for evaluation. Test all conductors for short circuits utilizing an insulation testing device. With each circuit pair, short circuit at the far end of the circuit and measure the circuit resistance with an ohmmeter.

- C. Report of Pretesting: After pretesting is complete, provide a letter certifying the installation is complete and fully operable. The letter shall include the names and titles of the witnesses to the preliminary tests.

- D. Final Test Notice: Provide 10 days minimum notice in writing when the system is ready for final acceptance testing.

- E. Final Test: This test must be complete for the fire alarm system to be considered 'Fully Operational'.

1. Retest existing system as required to comply with NFPA 72.
2. Have the fire alarm acceptance test performed by the Alarm Company Representative and installing Contractor in the presence of Engineer.
3. Acceptable Test Procedures: Test the system in accordance with the procedures outlined in NFPA 72, Chapters 10. Minimum required tests are as follows:

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| -Normal Power to Panel | (Secure/Normal) |
| -Disconnect Power to Panel | (Trouble) |
| -Activated Detection Device | (Alarm) |
| -Silence Alarm Signaling Devices | (Trouble) |
| -Return Normal Power to Panel & Reset Panel | (Secure/Normal) |
| -Place Each Function Switch in an Abnormal Positions | (Trouble) |
| -Remove supervised Devices from System (During this portion of testing, ensure proper wire has been used and devices are properly installed). | (Trouble) |

-Return Supervised Device to System	(Secure/Normal)
-Disconnect Normal Power to Panel	(Trouble)
-Activate Detector(s) (Alarm)	
Inspect all Horns/Bells,	
Zone Indication, and	
Auxiliary Devices	(Working List)
-Silence Horns/Bells	(Alarm/Trouble)
-Reset System	(Trouble)
-Return Normal Power to System	(Secure/Normal)

Place Panel in Alarm Condition. Disconnect Primary Power Source for a Minimum of 15 Seconds and Return to Normal Power. (The above transfer procedure shall not cause a loss of an alarm condition at Receiving Station.)

- a. Test the system for all specified functions in accordance with the manufacturer's operating and maintenance manual. Systematically initiate specified functional performance items at each station including making all possible alarm and monitoring initiations and using all communications options. For each item, observe related performance at all devices required to be affected by the item under all system sequences. Observe indicating lights, displays, signal tones, and annunciator indications. Record the functionality of each and every device in the system.
- b. Test both primary power and secondary power. Verify, by test, the secondary power system is capable of operating the system for the period and in the manner specified.

4. Submit system test certification / record of completion information.

3.6. CORRECTION OF DEFECTS

- A. When the tests disclose any unsatisfactory workmanship or equipment furnished under this Contract, correct defects and retest. Repeat tests until satisfactory results are obtained.
- B. When any wiring or equipment is damaged by tests, repair or replace such wiring or equipment. Test repaired items to ensure satisfactory operation.

C. SOFTWARE

1. Contractor and Fire Alarm system manufacturer / supplier shall furnish complete programming of system on either compact disc at completion of project. Provide this information with O&M Manuals.

3.7. WARRANTY

- A. General. The contractor warrants that all work provided under the contract will be in conformance with the contract and free from defects in workmanship, materials and equipment for a period of one (2) year or such longer periods may be specified in the contract documents, except as provided below. Warranty time periods shall commence from the date of Using Agency acceptance of the whole, or any part of the project.
- B. Prompt Repair. Upon notice from the Using Agency of any defects or non-conforming work, the Contractor shall promptly visit the site within 48 hours in the company of a building representative, and shall provide all labor, material and equipment to promptly repair or replace the defective or non-conforming work. The repair shall include all adjacent work not necessarily provided by the Contractor but damaged as a result of such defects or non-conforming work, the Using Agency may repair or replace such work and charge the cost

thereof to the Contractor. Work which is repaired or replaced by the Contractor shall be inspected and shall be warranted by the Contractor in accordance with this Article. The warranties set forth herein are in addition to all warranties or guarantees expressed or implied by operation of law, statute or ordinance.

- C. Commercial Warranties. The Contractor shall deliver all commercial warranties received from manufacturers to the A/E prior to final completion but this shall not reduce Contractor's obligations under this article.

END 28 3111

1. GENERAL

1.1. DESCRIPTION

- A. The Contractor shall perform all site grading and site work within construction zone specified herein and as required to return the site to original preconstruction condition wherein damage may be inflicted.
 - 1. Provide topsoil where needed, within the construction site as specified on the Drawings and as required to cause a gradual grade to sidewalks, drives, ramps and aprons.
 - 2. Loosen, load, haul and remove, relocate or dispose of excess site materials. Dispose of excess site materials off site. Excavate to rough grades for walks wherein replaced walk fails to allow for thickness of specified replacement. Provide fills and backfills of appropriate materials. Place and compact fills, back fills and re-grade work. Control site drainage during construction by pumping, bailing and trenching as required to maintain workable conditions.
 - 3. At the completion of construction work, remove all of the debris and rubbish.

- B. Related work specified elsewhere:
 - 1. 01 1000 – Summary of Work
 - 2. AIA General Conditions by reference
 - 3. 00 2213 – Supplementary Instructions
 - 4. Drawing C-1.0/C-1.1 temporary drive

1.2. QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with all codes, laws and State and Federal regulations applicable with this part of the work.

1.3. PROTECTION OF UTILITIES

- A. Protect all existing service lines and related structures or arrange for their repair with the proper authorities or companies.

- B. Report IN WRITING all uncharted or incorrectly charted lines to the Architect/Engineer for further direction.

- C. Joint Utilities Location Information for Excavators (J.U.L.I.E.) toll-free telephone number for checking underground utilities is 1-800-892-0123. Check also with the Water Utility and/or Telecable for information not available through J.U.L.I.E.

2. EXECUTION

2.1. FILL AND COMPACTION

- A. Fill material shall consist of suitable materials.

2.2. LAWN SEEDING

- A. Location - As applicable to repair site damage.
 - 1. Level and clean up all debris, rocks wood scraps.
 - 2. Finish with top soil
 - 3. Arrange inspection prior to start of landscaping work to verify site is clean, leveled and suitable for finished lawn condition.
- B. Seeding – See 31 9000.
- C. Where seed does not become established, return the following spring or fall and rework areas needing attention to become established.

2.3. SITE CLEANUP

- A. Finally, excess earth and debris resulting from repair grading operations shall be removed from the site by the Contractor.

END 31 2200

1. GENERAL

1.1. DESCRIPTION

- A. Provide all labor and materials for all excavation, grading, fill and backfill work of every kind needed to complete the general construction work in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- B. General Contractor shall locate and stake out building, establish building lines and levels, and provide permanent benchmarks for lines and levels for the use of all Contractors. He will be held responsible for the correctness of these lines and levels.
- C. Each Contractor shall contact J.U.L.I.E. (1-800-892-0123) and verify with non-member utilities all underground services, shall mark same and maintain marking during construction.
 - 1. Mark information on Contract Record Drawings.

1.2. QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Contractor shall include in his contract testing by an independent testing agency all granular backfill work.
 - 1. Testing agency shall certify compaction is satisfactory for proposed construction purposes.
 - 2. Send reports and certification of compaction directly to the Architect and Owner.
- B. Owner may schedule additional independent testing at his option.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. MATERIALS

- A. Earth fill or backfill
 - 1. Earth fill or backfill shall be natural earth, native to the general area of construction, free of debris, large rocks, unnatural materials of any type, and any other material which may impair long term stability or performance of the earth.
- B. Top soil
 - 1. Topsoil shall be natural earth, native to the general area of construction, which is suitable to support vegetation without excessive use of fertilizers or other soil treatment.
 - 2. This material shall be clean friable earth, free of sand, gravel, clay, debris or any materials that might impair the workability of the soil and/or its ability to sustain vegetation.

C. Gravel and granular fill

1. Gravel fill and backfill may be pit run or crushed pit run gravel in compliance with Grade CA 4 through CA 11, Class C or D or equal, ten percent (10%) clay maximum.
 - a. No aggregate larger than two inches (2") will be accepted.
2. Sand shall be natural bank sand in compliance with FA 1 through FA 7 or CA 16 through CA 19, Class C or equal, ten percent (10%) clay maximum.
3. Crushed limestone shall be grade CA 8 through CA 11, Class A with Class A, B or C allowed for fill.
4. Pea gravel shall be washed and graded natural gravel 3/8" to 1/2" in size.
5. Special granular fill requirements exceeding the above requirements may be noted on the Drawings or under a particular Specification Section. Such special fills shall take precedence.

D. Temporary service drive to Candy Avenue

1. See site plans for temporary service drive for construction
2. Drive maybe recycled asphalt material screened to a grading equivalent of CA -8 to CA-11, no big chunks.
3. At conclusion of work clean base material may be salvaged for use in the base work for the playground or the courtyard concrete work.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. SITE PREPARATION

- A. Remove all the surface debris, trees, bushes, not labeled to be saved, stumps, and any other conditions necessary to complete the work.
- B. Remove abandoned sidewalks, drives, and any construction encountered in the work not intended to be saved or in the way of work intended.
- C. Establish working grades and lay out building and site requirements such that earth stockpiles will not interfere with construction processes or proper site drainage.
- D. Strip the vegetation and eight inches (8") to twelve inches (12") of topsoil from all areas subject to final grade changes. This earth shall be stockpiled for use as topsoil in the final grading operations.
- E. Complete base grading necessary in the work, stacking clay separately from the topsoil. Fill and compacted fill work necessary to achieve base grading may be completed at a time during the construction work coordinate with all trades to allow timely and efficient progress.

3.2. EXCAVATION

- A. All excavations for footings shall be straight and level (unless shown otherwise) with straight, clean-cut sides, approximately square bottoms, and shall measure to the dimensions called for on the Drawings.
- B. If earth or conditions of doubtful or unexpected character are encountered, the observing Architect shall be notified and foundation work shall not proceed until his direction has been received.
- C. Trenches carried deeper than required by Plans, shall be filled with concrete by this Contractor without additional charge. In no case shall filling under foundations or footings be done with earth or backfill aggregate.
- D. Earth from excavations is to be piled so as not to interfere with trenching for drainage, gas service, water service, etc.
- E. The Contractor shall connect up all field drainage tile encountered in excavations as directed by the Architect. All abandoned sewer, water and gas lines encountered shall be connected or removed as directed by Architect.
- F. Keep all excavations free of standing water.

3.3. FILL AND BACKFILL

- A. Fill under and within five feet (5') of paving, sidewalks, curbs, concrete slabs, drives, streets, etc., shall be gravel compacted to at least ninety-five percent (95%) of Standard Proctor maximum dry density with a maximum permissible variation of moisture from the optimum moisture content of two percent (2%).
- B. No frozen materials or organic material may be used for backfill.
- C. Earth fill may be employed in lawn and yard areas.
- D. Earth fill shall be suitably compacted to prevent future settlement.

3.4. SURPLUS EARTH AND SITE DEBRIS

- A. Surplus earth from excavation and site preparation shall be:
 - 1. Clean earth, use for grading, stockpile remainder.
 - 2. Earth with rubble or construction debris - remove from site.
 - 3. Separate topsoil and clay or fill earth.
- B. All site debris, trees, bushes, and unnatural materials encountered shall be removed from the site and disposed of at the Contractor's expense.

3.5. GRADING

- A. The Contractor shall execute the finish grade, the top six inches (6") of

which shall consist of topsoil. The Contractor shall grade to uniform level and slope away from building for drainage.

- B. All grading shall be as indicated on the Drawings. Existing drainage patterns to adjacent property shall be maintained. No areas shall pond or retain water unless specifically identified on the Drawings.
- C. Repair all areas that settle and erode within the first year of Owner occupancy.

3.6. SEED - BY CONTRACTOR

- A. Fine grade and seed all areas disturbed by construction.
 - 1. Apply standard lawn seed - blue grass 30%/red fescue 50%/annual rye 20% maximum.
 - 2. Apply lawn fertilizer 12/12/12 or better.
 - 3. Apply straw to all seeded areas.
 - 4. Sloped areas that will not hold straw and seed shall be seeded with an IDOT approved seeding mesh with straw bales to control erosion.

3.7. WARRANTY

- A. During the one (1) year warranty period, re-grade any areas subject to settlement or erosion and reseed or sod as appropriate. Reseed or sod any areas of lawn which do not survive the first growing season excluding the following:
 - 1. Areas subject to excessive traffic.

END 31 2300

1. GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Complete all paving and surfacing work as described on the Drawings and herein these Specifications including labor, materials, surface preparation, cleanup, establishing lines, levels, and all associated site work.
 - 1. Playground, phase 2 site work, see site plan C-1.1
- B. Bituminous surface paving work shall be scheduled to allow public access to the building.
- C. General Description
 - 1. Prepare for new surfacing as noted on Drawings.
 - a. Provide/replace aggregate base course where noted, at potholes or inspect and proof roll existing and re-shaped base.
 - b. Base to be minimum 8" compacted granular unless noted areas are to be heavier.
 - c. Report any deficiencies observed to the Architect and/or Owner. Do not proceed without approval.
 - d. Apply two-inch (2") base binder course as noted on the Drawings, N-90 or N-50 bituminous concrete.
 - 1. Polymer modified bitumen
 - e. Apply 1 1/2" surface course as noted on the Drawings, N-50 bituminous concrete.
 - 1. Polymer modified bitumen.

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All work shall be completed by crews experienced in this type application with proper equipment.
- B. All of the work shall comply to the minimum State of Illinois Department of Transportation (IDOT) Specifications, where listed.
 - 1. IDOT plant certification is not required.
 - 2. Testing for mix certification may be requested.
- C. Testing for mix certification may be requested.
- D. No paving shall be installed over a soft, uncompacted, or frozen base, nor until construction scheduling will allow installation without heavy truck traffic for three (3) days for bituminous concrete. Any paving section not

complying with this requirement, showing sinking, or suffering from cracking greater than the shrinkage cracking shall be removed and replaced at no additional charge.

- E. Grade shall be continually checked during paving operations to assure natural drainage of all surfaces without any ponding.
- F. Paving shall be completed only when suitable weather conditions prevail, low temperatures shall be above freezing and rain shall not be predicted during operations or shortly thereafter.
- G. All paving shall have the top surface adequately compacted and finished to be dense and moisture-resistant. The surface finish shall be uniformly textured to be anti-slip when wet and visually consistent in appearance.
- H. All paving and gravel base shall be full minimum thickness or thicker, measured after compaction.
- I. Surface areas which are found to be irregular, thin, improperly compacted, porous or otherwise defective shall be removed and replaced at no additional expense to the Owner.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Granular Base Course: Shall be crushed gravel base CA-6, CA 8, CA 9, CA 10, or equivalent, Class A, B or C.
 - 1. Subject to approval, granular base course may be recycled bituminous concrete of comparable gradation
 - 2. Clean salvaged recycle asphalt from the temporary drive may be employed for this base work, not more than 15% dirt mixed in.
 - 3. Eight inch (8") minimum after compaction.
- B. Primer: Shall be MC-30, RT-1, or RT-2 for crushed rock bases; RC-70 or RT-6 for brick, concrete, and bituminous base; and AC 60-70, AC 70-85, or AC 85-100 for binder and surface courses for cracks, joints, and flangeways, and to embed fabric when specified.
 - 1. Follow IDOT practices
- C. Binder Leveling Course: IDOT Binder Mixture N-90 (or surface course material N-50).
 - 1. One and half (1½") compacted thickness unless noted otherwise on Drawings.
 - 2. Apply as noted on Drawings.
 - 3. Always shape to drain without ponding
 - 4. Polymer bitumen.

- D. Surface Mix: Shall be IDOT Surface Mixture N-50
 - 1. One and one half inch (1 ½") compacted thickness.
 - 2. Always shape and to drain without ponding.
 - 3. Polymer bitumen.
- E. Bitumen: 200 - 300 for surface course
150 - 200 for binding and leveling courses
Prior verify use of softer grade for cold weather work.
- F. Striping
 - 1. Stripe free throw line and lanes at each basket, white

3. EXECUTION

3.1 PARKING AND DRIVE AREAS EXECUTION

- A. Strip sod:
- B. All gravel base shall be graded and compacted prior to application of the surface courses.
 - 1. Compact to 95% modified proctor density.
 - 2. Eight inch (8") minimum or thickness noted on Drawings; see drawings for limited existing areas requiring new base.
- C. Extend gravel base four inches (4") beyond edge of new blacktop surface where applicable (Lawn).
 - 1. Dress edge with crushed limestone CA 8 or CA 10 after paving is completed to level with finish surface.
 - 2. Provide top soil finish along perimeters and seed
- D. Bituminous concrete materials shall be applied only when outside air temperature exceeds forty (40) degrees F. unless permitted by special approval.
 - 1. Base course 1½" compacted
 - 2. Surface course 1½" compacted.
- E. Prime all surfaces which will contact the bituminous mixture.
- F. Prime and patch all of the depression, potholes, and the surface irregularities to provide a level base surface. Inspect all areas to be surfaced to determine extent of patching required. Patches shall be made with hot bituminous concrete patching mix, hand placed, leveled, and machine compacted.
 - 1. Compact to IDOT standards
 - 2. Not less than 95% Modified Proctor.

- G. Apply pavement reinforcement fabric where called for on the Drawings, where directed and fully embed and saturate into asphalt primer as recommended by the Manufacturer. Fabric shall be placed without rips or wrinkles to the extent possible, and with twelve inch (12") laps.
- H. Drainage
1. Paving must be placed and shaped to allow full surface drainage without ponding.
 2. If necessary, build up thickness or apply and feather out binder, do not thin overlay to accomplish. (Exception: small or limited reduction to 1-1/2" overlay will be allowed at narrow humps or isolated high spots in existing surface).
 3. Check slope continually.
 4. See drawings for areas that may required shaped swale
 - a. Such swales shall be uniform
 - b. Shallow slope sides, approximately 5%, 8% maximum in tight conditions.
 - c. Swale flow slope 1% minimum, 2% preferred.
 - d. Shape base appropriately, swale construction does not change thickness requirements
- I. The bituminous mixtures shall be placed true to crown and grade with a spreading and finishing machine. Bituminous mixtures may be spread and finished by approved hand methods only where machine methods are impractical, as in the case of special areas which because of irregularity, or unavoidable obstacles do not lend themselves to mechanical placing. Hand compaction shall provide ninety-five percent (95%) modified proctor density rating similar to mechanically compacted surfaces.
- J. Immediately after the bituminous concrete mixture is placed, it shall be compacted thoroughly and uniformly with a three-wheel roller or a tandem roller or equipment appropriate to pavement shape and project size. Comply with IDOT instructions for compaction. Where initial rolling causes undue displacement, hair-cracking, or checking in either the binder course or the surface course, the time of rolling shall be adjusted to correct these conditions. Replace damaged sections.
- K. After final compression, the surface course shall, at no point, have a density less than ninety-five percent (95%) of the maximum possible density of a voidless pavement composed of same materials in like proportions. If the density of the finished binder course is less than 95%, additional rolling will be required.
- L. All course thicknesses listed are after-compaction thicknesses.
- M. Striping
1. 2" white lines.

END 32 1200

1. GENERAL

1.1. WORK INCLUDED

- A. The General Contractor shall provide a chain link fence including all accessory and hardware items necessary to complete the fencing assembly. The system shall be a nominal eight-foot (8') fence
 - 1. Hot dip galvanized posts, aluminized chain link.
 - a. Top and bottom rail system.
 - b. Chain link (KK) knuckle-knuckle style
 - 2. Fencing shall include slide in decorative pvc slats in limited areas.
 - a. Approximately 50' at inset near southwest end at boiler room.
 - b. Includes gate.
 - 3. See plan for extent, approximately 560' of new 8' fencing and gates.
 - 4. All gates to have heavy duty hardware including pad lock hasps
 - 5. Top and bottom rail design
- B. The fence shall not be installed until the site preparation processes have been completed
 - 1. Coordinate with other trades and local conditions.
- C. Verify underground utilities to install fence.

1.2. SUBMITTALS

- A. Provide Shop Drawings accurately describing the fencing components and layout.

1.3. QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All products shall comply with the standards set forth by the Chain Link Manufacturer's Institute.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. MATERIALS

- A. Fabric: The fabric will be 9 gauge aluminized steel woven fabric, in a two inch (2") mesh with t(KK) knuckle-knuckle X 8'-0" high.
- B. Line Posts: Line posts shall be hot dip galvanized posts, coated 2.875" outside diameter, Schedule 40 or 80.

- C. Terminal and corner posts shall be hot dip galvanized, 4" outside diameter, Schedule 40.
- D. Gate posts shall be hot dip galvanized, 4" outside diameter, Schedule 40.
- E. Rails and Braces: The rails and braces shall be Type I, 1.66", galvanized pipe. Provide top and bottom rail all around. Diagonal brace at corner posts, gates, and 100' intervals along line posts.
- F. Post Tops: Posts shall be capped.
- G. Tension Wire: Not required where bottom rail is provided. Tension wire shall be twisted and aluminized steel, 7 gauge wire continuous along the bottom.
- H. Tees, Clips and Accessories: Tees, clips and accessories shall be as needed for the assembly, galvanized or aluminized as is standard with the Manufacturer's system. Secure fabric at top and bottom at intervals not exceeding 15" along all posts, rails and tension wires.
- I. Barbed Wire: none.
- J. Gates: detailed, design and brace for normal commercial duty.
 - 1. See plan for two (2) 6' pair 12' nominal swing gates
 - a. North end near building.
 - b. East side, north end of paved playground.
 - 2. See plan for 6' swing gate
 - a. East side near classroom addition.
 - 2. See plan for existing (e) gate to remain
 - a. Near boiler room.
 - 3. Gates to be smooth operation
 - 4. Gate latching to be positive and accept padlock
 - 5. Provide concrete receiver with pipe sleeve for swinging gate drop bar
- K. Gate components, gate latch and lock for pad lock, manufacturer's standard for heavy duty daily use, smooth manual operation.
- L. Vision slats to be inserted in fence return and existing gate near SW corner of the enclosed area, adjacent to boiler room door.

3. EXECUTION

3.1. WORKMANSHIP

- A. Work shall be first class. The fabric shall be tightly stretched and secured. Posts shall be vertical in alignment, properly spaced, and all components rigidly assembled. Gate shall operate smoothly without binding or sagging. Any of the work deemed not acceptable by the Architect/Engineer shall be replaced.
 - 1. Hold fabric, bottom rail 1½" to 3" above grade to allow mowing and trimming.
- B. Posts shall be set with concrete holes as detailed with a minimum depth of forty-two inches (42"). Hole sides shall be uniform. Form and pour with smooth sides. DO NOT LET TOP OF CONCRETE BULGE OUT TO FORM A FROST LEDGE.
 - 1. Hold below finish paving surfaces for Bituminous
 - 2. Core or PVC sleeve paving.
- C. The line posts shall be at 10'-0" on center maximum. Provide an additional brace rail and tie at each corner, gate and 100' intervals along line fence.
- D. Where slabs or mechanical equipment pads occur, the posts shall be set into the concrete such that concrete extends out past fence line three inches (3").

END 32 3113

1. GENERAL

1.1. DESCRIPTION

A. Base Bid:

- 1 Provide all labor and materials for all finish lawns and plantings to complete the work in accordance and restore the site.
- 2 Top soil preparation
- 3 Grass seeding, straw blankets or seed blankets and sod work as need to re-establish all lawn areas impacted by the work
- 4 Trees in courtyard

B. Alternate #3 – Courtyard

- 1 Provide labor and materials for trees as noted on the plans
- 2 Trees noted are a bidding guide for value, always coordinate with the Owner the desired trees prior to acquiring and planting.

C. Each Contractor shall contact J.U.L.I.E. (1-800-892-0123) and verify with non-member utilities all underground services, shall mark same and maintain marking during construction.

- 1 Mark information on Contract Record Drawings.

1.2. QUALITY CONTROL

A Inspect conditions prior to planting and do not plant into improperly prepared soils, compacted clay, soil not properly loosened and prepared or prior to complete site cleanup.

- 1 Work to be completed by personnel that know how to prepare and plant for best result
- 2 Remove or peel down and cut away burlap or peat containers used for transplanting and transporting plant stocks.

2. PRODUCTS

2.1. MATERIALS

A. Top soil

- 1 All lawn areas including the courtyard if Alternate #3 is declined, shall have 4" to 6" of top soil, worked and loosened without clods or debris
- 2 Top soil is to be an organic loam base typical of our general area and not have significant clay or granular content.

B. Planting mix

- 1 For plantings in containers, root balls stock etc., to be a standard mix sold for that purpose around the base of the excavation and/or mixed with top soil fill.
- 2 This material shall be clean friable earth, free of sand, gravel, clay, debris or any materials that might impair the workability of the soil and/or its ability to sustain vegetation.

C. Grass seed

- 1 General lawn mix, sun and shade
- 2 Nominal mix percentages may vary to seed provider recommendation and standard lawn mix such as:
 - a. Kentucky blue grass 20% to 30%
 - b. Annual rye 20 to 25%
 - c. Creeping red fescue 40 to 50%
 - d. Perineal rye 0% to 15%
3. Application rate approximately 1 lb per 250 square feet.

D. Container or balled plant stock

- 1 Shall be healthy and in good condition from an established nursery.
- 2 Sizes and quantities noted on drawings.

B. Fertilizer

- 1 Provide starter fertilizer for all work
- 2 Lawns 10-10-10 or similar spread at recommended rate, not required if hydro seed process used with soluble fertilizer included in the mix.
- 3 Trees and shrubs, plant with water soluble starter root fertilizer.

4. EXECUTION

4.1. INSTALLATION

- A. Follow good practice in all planting operations into properly prepared and graded soils.
- B. Seeding operation to be hydro seeding, seed mats or drilled seed
- C. Seed that is surface spread, shall be rolled and then have straw spread over it then thoroughly wetted down.
- D. Replace plant materials that do not get established within one year.
- E. Trees should be staked where exposed to wind and inclement environment.

END 32 9000